

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date
19 June 2003 (19.06.2003)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number
WO 03/049702 A2

(51) International Patent Classification⁷: **A61K**

(21) International Application Number: **PCT/US02/39589**

(22) International Filing Date:
10 December 2002 (10.12.2002)

(25) Filing Language: **English**

(26) Publication Language: **English**

(30) Priority Data:
60/339,161 10 December 2001 (10.12.2001) US
60/344,737 21 December 2001 (21.12.2001) US
60/383,331 22 May 2002 (22.05.2002) US
60/402,422 8 August 2002 (08.08.2002) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): **AMGEN INC.** [US/US]; One Amgen Center Drive, Thousand Oaks, CA 91320-1799 (US).

(71) Applicant (for US only): **OGNYANOV, Vassil, I.** [US/US]; 902 W. Marcello Avenue, Thousand Oaks, CA 91320 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **BO, Yunxin, Y.** [CN/US]; 419 Calle Veracruz, Thousand Oaks, CA 91320 (US). **CHAKRABARTI, Partha, P.** [IN/US]; 521 Yarrow Drive, Simi Valley, CA 93065 (US). **CHEN, Ning** [CN/US]; 2342 Gillingham Circle, Thousand Oaks, CA 91362 (US). **DOHERTY, Elizabeth, M.** [US/US]; 284 Marjori Avenue, Newbury Park, CA 91320 (US). **FOTSCH, Christopher, H.** [US/US]; 533 Timberwood

Avenue, Thousand Oaks, CA 91360 (US). **HAN, Nianhe** [US/US]; 2217 Rutland Place, Thousand Oaks, CA 91362 (US). **KELLY, Michael, G.** [GB/US]; 790 Sandoval Place, Thousand Oaks, CA 91360 (US). **LIU, Qingyian** [CN/US]; 4631 Paseo Girasol, Camarillo, CA 93012 (US). **NORMAN, Mark, Henry** [US/US]; 130 Venus Street, Thousand Oaks, CA 91360 (US). **WANG, Xianghong** [CN/US]; 11621 Country Springs Ct., Moorpark, CA 93021 (US). **ZHU, Jiawang** [US/US]; 77 Mahogany Lane, Simi Valley, CA 93065 (US).

(74) Agents: **ODRE, Steven M.** et al.; Amgen Inc., One Amgen Center Drive, M/S 27-4-A, Thousand Oaks, CA 91320-1799 (US).

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EC, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, OM, PH, PL, PT, RO, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, YU, ZA, ZM, ZW.

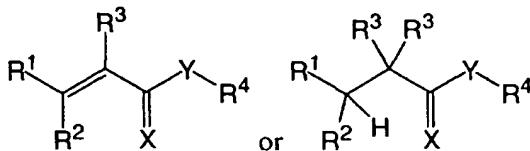
(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

— without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: **VANILLOID RECEPTOR LIGANDS AND THEIR USE IN TREATMENTS**



(I)

(57) Abstract: Compounds having the general structure (formule 1) and compositions containing them, for the treatment of acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache, , general inflammation arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory

or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathy pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentiation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis, bronchial disorders or bladder disorders.



For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

- 1 -

VANILLOID RECEPTOR LIGANDS AND THEIR USE IN TREATMENTS

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application Nos. 60/339,161 filed December 10, 2001, 60/344,737, filed December 21, 2001,
5 60/383,331, filed May 22, 2002 and 60/402,422, filed August 8, 2002, which are hereby incorporated by reference.

Background

The vanilloid receptor 1 (VR1) is the molecular target of capsaicin, the active ingredient in hot peppers. Julius et al. reported the molecular cloning of
10 VR1 (Caterina et al., 1997). VR1 is a non-selective cation channel which is activated or sensitized by a series of different stimuli including capsaicin and resiniferatoxin (exogenous activators), heat & acid stimulation and products of lipid bilayer metabolism, anandamide (Premkumar et al., 2000, Szabo et al., 2000, Gauldie et al., 2001, Olah et al., 2001) and lipoxxygenase metabolites (Hwang et
15 al., 2000). VR1 is highly expressed in primary sensory neurons (Caterina et al., 1997) in rats, mice and humans (Onozawa et al., 2000, Mezey et al., 2000, Helliwell et al., 1998, Cortright et al., 2001). These sensory neurons innervate many visceral organs including the dermis, bones, bladder, gastrointestinal tract and lungs; VR1 is also expressed in other neuronal and non-neuronal tissues
20 including but not limited to, CNS nuclei, kidney, stomach and T-cells (Nozawa et al., 2001, Yiangou et al., 2001, Birder et al., 2001). Presumably expression in these various cells and organs may contribute to their basic properties such as cellular signaling and cell division.

Prior to the molecular cloning of VR1, experimentation with capsaicin
25 indicated the presence of a capsaicin sensitive receptor, which could increase the activity of sensory neurons in humans, rats and mice (Holzer, 1991; Dray, 1992, Szallasi and Blumberg 1996, 1999). The results of acute activation by capsaicin in humans was pain at injection site and in other species increased behavioral sensitivity to sensory stimuli (Szallasi and Blumberg, 1999). Capsaicin
30 application to the skin in humans causes a painful reaction characterized not only by the perception of heat and pain at the site of administration but also by a wider area of hyperalgesia and allodynia, two characteristic symptoms of the human

- 2 -

condition of neuropathic pain (Holzer, 1991). Taken together, it seems likely that increased activity of VR1 plays a significant role in the establishment and maintenance of pain conditions. Topical or intradermal injection of capsaicin has also been shown to produce localized vasodilation and edema production (Szallasi
5 and Blumberg 1999, Singh et al., 2001). This evidence indicates that capsaicin through it's activation of VR1 can regulate afferent and efferent function of sensory nerves. Sensory nerve involvement in diseases could therefore be modified by molecules which effect the function of the vanilloid receptor to increase or decrease the activity of sensory nerves.

10 VR1 gene knockout mice have been shown to have reduced sensory sensitivity to thermal and acid stimuli (Caterina et al., 2000)). This supports the concept that VR1 contributes not only to generation of pain responses (i.e. via thermal, acid or capsaicin stimuli) but also to the maintenance of basal activity of sensory nerves. This evidence agrees with studies demonstrating capsaicin
15 sensitive nerve involvement in disease. Primary sensory nerves in humans and other species can be made inactive by continued capsaicin stimulation. This paradigm causes receptor activation induced desensitization of the primary sensory nerve - such reduction in sensory nerve activity *in vivo* makes subjects less sensitive to subsequent painful stimuli. In this regard both capsaicin and
20 resiniferatoxin (exogenous activators of VR1), produce desensitization and they have been used for many proof of concept studies in *in vivo* models of disease (Holzer, 1991, Dray 1992, Szallasi and Blumberg 1999).

VR1 agonists or antagonists have use as analgesics for the treatment of pain of various genesis or aetiology, for example acute, inflammatory and
25 neuropathic pain, dental pain and headache, particularly vascular headache such as migraine, cluster headache and mixed vascular syndromes as well as non-vascular, tension headache. They are also useful as anti-inflammatory agents for the treatment of inflammatory diseases or conditions, for example the treatment of arthritis and rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders,
30 inflammatory eye disorders (e.g. uvetis), inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders (e.g. cystitis and urinary incontinence), psoriasis and skin complaints with inflammatory components, as well as other chronic inflammatory conditions.

- 3 -

They are, in particular, useful in the treatment of inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia. They are also useful in the treatment of neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, e.g. trigeminal or herpetic neuralgia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain and deafferentation syndromes such as brachial plexus avulsion. They are also indicated for the use in the prophylactic or curative treatment of asthma, of epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, e.g. spontaneous lesions, of herpes simplex, and in the control of disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular e.g. for treating wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis and vitiligo, for the prophylactic or curative treatment of gastrointestinal disorders such as gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, inflammatory bowel disease and diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, for example ethanol or chemotherapeutic agents, hair growth, for the treatment of vasomotor or allergic rhinitis and for the treatment of bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, such as bladder hyper-reflexia.

Bibliography

- Birder-LA. Kanai-AJ. de-Groat-WC. Kiss-S. Nealen-ML. Burke-NE. Dineley-KE. Watkins-S. Reynolds-IJ. Caterina-MJ. (2001) Vanilloid receptor expression suggests a sensory role for urinary bladder epithelial cells. PNAS 98: 23: 13396-13401.
- Caterina, M.J., Schumacher, M.A., Tominaga, M., Rosen, T.A., Levine, J.D., and Julius, D, (1997). The capsaicin receptor: a heat-activated ion channel in the pain pathway. Nature 389: 816-824.
- Caterina-MJ. Leffler-A. Malmberg-AB. Martin-WJ. Trafton-J. Petersen-Zeitz KR. Koltzenburg-M. Basbaum-AI. Julius-D (2000) Impaired nociception and pain sensation in mice lacking the capsaicin receptor. Science-(WASH-DC). 288: 5464: 306-313.
- Cortright-DN. Crandall-M. Sanchez-JF. Zou-T. Krause-JE.
- White-G (2001) The tissue distribution and functional characterization of human VR1. Biochemical and Biophysical Research Communications 281: 5: 1183-1189

- 4 -

- Dray, A., (1992). Therapeutic potential of capsaicin-like molecules. *Life Sciences* 51: 1759-1765.
- Gauldie-SD. McQueen-DS. Pertwee-R. Chessell-IP. (2001) Anandamide activates peripheral nociceptors in normal and arthritic rat knee joints. *British Journal of Pharmacology* 132: 3: 617-621.
- Helliwell-RJA. McLatchie-LM. Clarke-M. Winter-J. Bevan-S. McIntyre-P (1998) Capsaicin sensitivity is associated with expression of the vanilloid (capsaicin) receptor (VR1) mRNA in adult rat sensory ganglia. *Neuroscience Lett.* 250: 3: 177-180.
- 10 Holzer, P. (1991) Capsaicin: Cellular targets, Mechanisms of Action and selectivity for thin sensory neurons. *Pharmacological reviews* 43: 2: 143-201
- Hwang-SW. Cho-H. Kwak-J. Lee-SY. Kang-CJ. Jung-J. Cho-S. Min-KH. Suh-YG. Kim-D. Oh-U. (2000) Direct activation of capsaicin receptors by products of lipoxygenases: Endogenous capsaicin-like substances.
- 15 PNAS 97: 11: 6155-6160.
- Mezey-E. Toth-ZE. Cortright-DN. Arzubi-MK. Krause-JE. Elde-R. Guo-A. Blumberg-PM. Szallasi-A (2000) Distribution of mRNA for vanilloid receptor subtype 1 (VR1), and VR1-like immunoreactivity, in the central nervous system of the rat and human.
- 20 PNAS 97: 7: 3655-3660.
- Nozawa-Y. Nishihara-K. Yamamoto-A. Nakano-M. Ajioka-H. Matsuura-N.(2001) Distribution and characterization of vanilloid receptors in the rat stomach. *Neuroscience Letters* 309: 1: 33-36.
- Olah-Z. Karai-L. Iadarola-MJ. (2001) Anandamide activates vanilloid receptor 1 (VR1) at acidic pH in dorsal root ganglia neurons and cells ectopically expressing VR1. *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 276: 33, 31163-31170.
- 25 Onozawa-K. Nakamura-A. Tsutsumi-S. Yao-J. Ishikawa-R. Kohama-K. (2000) Tissue distribution of capsaicin receptor in the various organs of rats. *Proc. Jpn. Acad. Ser. B, Phys.-Biol. Sci.* 76: 5: 68-72.
- 30 Premkumar-LS. Ahern-GP. (2000) Induction of vanilloid receptor channel activity by protein kinase C. *Nature (London)* 408: 6815: 985-990.

- 5 -

- Singh-LK. Pang-X. Alexacos-N. Letourneau-R. Theoharides-TC. (1999) Acute immobilization stress triggers skin mast cell degranulation via corticotropin releasing hormone, neurotensin, and substance P: A link to neurogenic skin disorders. *Brain Behav. Immun.* 13: 3: 225-239.
- 5 Szallasi, A. Blumberg-PM (1996) Vanilloid receptors: New insights enhance potential as a therapeutic target. *Pain* 68: 195-208
- Szallasi-A. Blumberg-PM. (1999) Vanilloid (capsaicin) receptors and mechanisms. *Pharmacol. Rev.* 51: 2: 159-211.
- Szabo-T. Wang-J. Gonzalez-A. Kedei-N. Lile-J. Treanor-J. Blumberg-PM.
- 10 (2000) Pharmacological characterization of the human vanilloid receptor type-1 (hVR1). *Society for Neuroscience Abstracts.* 26:1-2: 634.18.
- Tominaga, M., Caterina, M.J., Malmberg, A.B., Rosen, T.A., Gilbert, H., Skinner, K., Raumann, B.E., Basbaum, A.I., and Julius, D., (1998). The cloned capsaicin receptor integrates multiple pain-producing stimuli. *Neuron* 21: 531-543.
- 15 Yiangou-Y. Facer-P. Dyer-NHC. Chan-CLH. Knowles-C.
- Williams-NS. Anand-P. (2001) Vanilloid receptor 1 immunoreactivity in inflamed human bowel. *Lancet (North American Edition)* 357: 9265: 1338-1339.
- Yiangou-Y. Facer-P. Ford-A. Brady-C. Wiseman-O. Fowler-CJ.
- Anand-P. (2001) Capsaicin receptor VR1 and ATP-gated ion channel P2X3 in
- 20 human urinary bladder. *BJU International* 87: 9: 774-779.
- Wang-H. Bian-D. Zhu-D. Zajic-G. Loeloff-R. Lile-J. Wild-K. Treanor-J.
- Curran-E. (2000) Inflammation-induced upregulation of VR1 in rat spinal cord and DRG correlates with enhanced nociceptive processing. *Society for Neuroscience Abstracts* 26:1-2: 632.15.

25

Summary

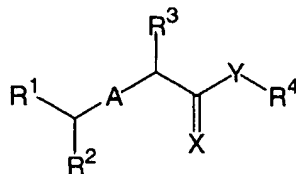
The present invention comprises a new class of compounds useful in the treatment of diseases, such as vanilloid-receptor-mediated diseases and other maladies, such as inflammatory or neuropathic pain and diseases involving

30 sensory nerve function such as asthma, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, urinary incontinence, migraine and psoriasis. In particular, the compounds of the invention are useful for the treatment of acute,

- 6 -

inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis, bronchial disorders or bladder disorders. Analogously, the invention also comprises pharmaceutical compositions comprising the compounds, methods for the treatment of vanilloid-receptor-mediated diseases, such as inflammatory or neuropathic pain, asthma, rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, urinary incontinence, migraine and psoriasis diseases, using the compounds and compositions of the invention, and intermediates and processes useful for the preparation of the compounds of the invention.

The compounds of the invention are represented by the following general structure



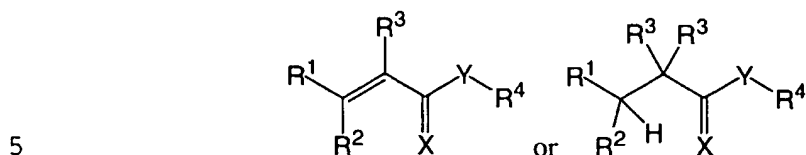
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein A, R¹, R², R³, R⁴, X and Y are defined below.

The foregoing merely summarizes certain aspects of the invention and is not intended, nor should it be construed, as limiting the invention in any way. All patents, patent applications and other publications recited herein are hereby incorporated by reference in their entirety.

- 7 -

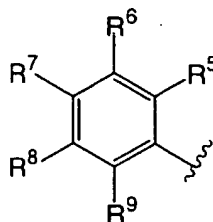
Detailed Description

One aspect of the current invention relates to compounds having the general structure:



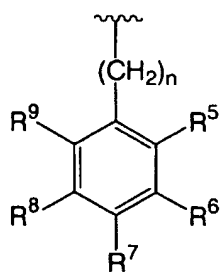
wherein:

R¹ is



10 or a naphthyl or saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the naphthyl, heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵, R⁶ and R⁷;

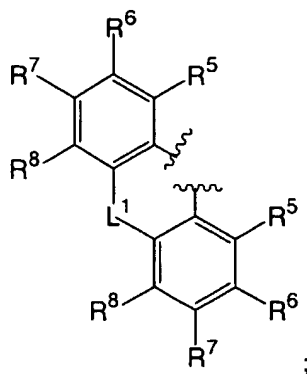
15 R² is H, hydroxy, halo, C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R¹⁰,



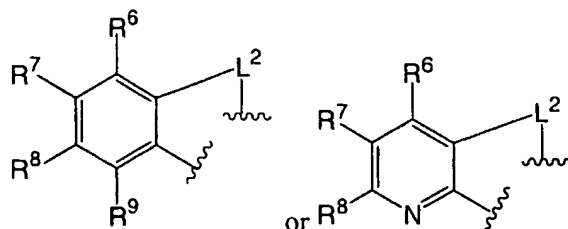
20 or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a

- 8 -

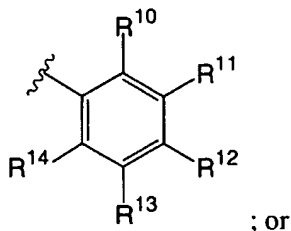
phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;
or R^1 and R^2 together are



5 R^3 is H or C_{1-4} alkyl; or R^1 and R^3 together are



R^4 is



R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2
10 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of
the heterocycle and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
15 independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$,
 $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a ,
 $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a ,

- 9 -

-NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl and -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; or R⁴ is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising fused 6-membered rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder being carbon atoms, with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic, wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^a, NR^aR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl and C₁₋₃haloalkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O; except that when R¹ is 4-chlorophenyl, 3-bromophenyl, 3-nitrophenyl, 2-nitro-3-chlorophenyl, 3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl, 3-methylthiophenyl or 2,3,4-methoxyphenyl, then R⁴ is not phenyl substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from halo and C₁₋₄alkyl; and R¹ and R⁴ are not both 3,4-methylenedioxyphenyl; and when R¹ is 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, then R⁴ is not pyridinyl, 2-methyl-4-aminoquinolinyl or 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl;

R⁵ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a; or R⁵ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S;

R⁶ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a; or R⁵ and R⁶ together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, (=O), -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a and C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, and the available N atoms of the bridge are substituted by R^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a or C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a;

R⁷ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a;

- 10 -

R^8 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a or $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a ; or R^7 and R^8 together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-6} alkyl, $(=O)$, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^aC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a and C_{1-6} alkyl NR^aR^a , and the available N atoms of the bridge are substituted by R^a , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a or C_{1-6} alkyl NR^aR^a ;

R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a or $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a ;

R^{10} is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl OR^a , C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_nC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^aC_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

R^{11} is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl OR^a , C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_nC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl R^c , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^aC_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; or R^{10} and R^{11} together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, $=O$, $-OR^a$, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^a$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a ,

- 11 -

- C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a,
 -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or
 -C₁₋₃alkylR^c; wherein if R¹⁰, R¹², R¹³ and R¹⁴ are all H, then R¹¹ is not
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a;
- 5 R¹² is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
 -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
 10 -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; or R¹¹ and R¹² together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or
 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the
 remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not
 greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by
 H, =O, -OR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a,
 15 -C(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
 -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a,
 -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or
 20 -C₁₋₃alkylR^c;
- when R¹ is 4-C₁₋₆alkylphenyl or 2,4-dimethylphenyl, then R¹¹ is C₁₋₉alkyl,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylR^c, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a,
 -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
 25 -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
 -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; or R¹⁰ and R¹¹ together are -L³-NR^a-, respectively, or
 -L⁴-O-, respectively; or R¹¹ and R¹² are -NR^a-L³-, -L³-NR^a-, -O-L⁴- or -L⁴-O-; or
 R¹² is -NR^aR^b; or R⁴ is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising fused 6-membered
 rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder being carbon atoms,
 30 with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic, wherein the carbon
 atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^a, NR^aR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl and C₁₋₃haloalkyl; and
 saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O; or R⁴ is a saturated

- 12 -

or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the heterocycle and bridge are substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₂₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl and -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R¹³ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R¹⁴ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R^a is independently, at each instance, H, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

R^b is H, C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-O-R^a;

R^c is phenyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 groups selected from halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OR^a and -NR^aR^a; or R^c is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the carbon atoms of the heterocycle are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the

- 13 -

heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OR^a and -NR^aR^a;

L¹ is a bond, -CH₂CH₂- or -CH=CH-;

L² is NR^a, O, S(=O)_n, -N=CH-, -CH₂NR^a-, -CH=N- or -NR^aCH₂-;

5 L³ is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3 carbon atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from O, N and S, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, -OR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a, -C(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, 10 -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or -C₁₋₃alkylR^c;

15 L⁴ is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3 carbon atoms and 0 or 1 atoms independently selected from O, N and S, wherein at least one of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by =O, -OR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl, 20 -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or -C₁₋₃alkylR^c;

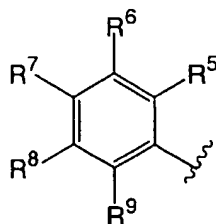
25 X is O, S or NR^a; or X and R² together are =N-CH=CH-, =C-O-, =C-S-, or =C-NR^a-;

Y is NH or O; and

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2; with the proviso that when R¹ is 4-chlorophenyl, then R⁴ is not 3-methoxyphenyl.

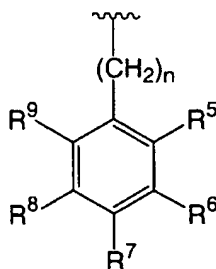
30 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹ is

- 14 -



- or a naphthyl or saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is
- 5 optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the naphthyl, heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;

R^2 is H, hydroxy, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R^{10} ,

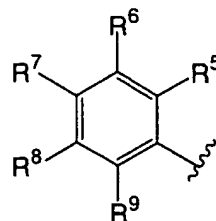


10

- or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
- 15 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ; and

R^3 is H or C_{1-4} alkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is



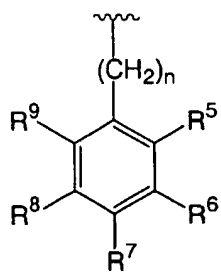
- 15 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^7 is independently, at each instance, C_{2-9} alkyl or
 C_{1-4} haloalkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
5 embodiments above and below, R^1 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N,
O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the
heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused
phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from
10 R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N,
O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the
15 heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused
phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from
 R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^2 is

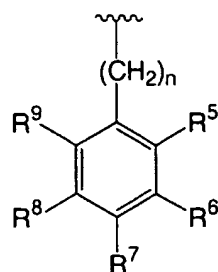


20

or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or
3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of
the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a
phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
25 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

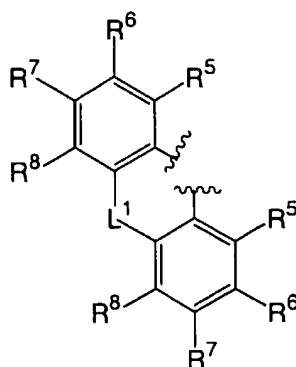
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^2 is

- 16 -

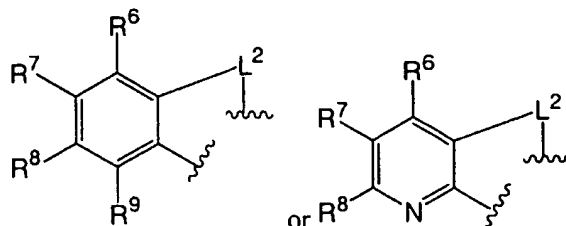


In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N,
5 O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the
heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused
phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from
 R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
10 embodiments above and below, R^1 and R^2 together are



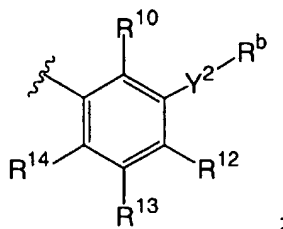
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^1 and R^3 together are



- 17 -

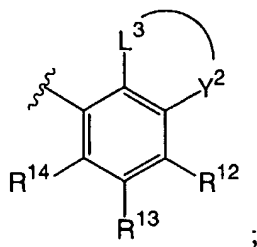
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, X and R² together are =N-CH=CH-, =C-O-,
=C-S-, or =C-NR^a-.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
5 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is



R^b is H, C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-O-R^a; and
Y² is -NR^a- or -O-.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
10 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is

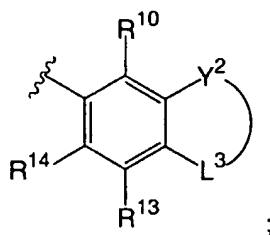


L³ is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3
carbon atoms and 0 or 1 atoms independently selected from O, N and S, wherein
the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, -OR^a,
15 -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a, -C(=O)NR^aR^a,
-C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
-C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a,
20 -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or
-C₁₋₃alkylR^c;

R^b is H, C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-O-R^a; and
Y² is -NR^b- or -O-.

- 18 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^4 is

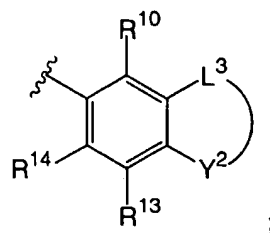


L^3 is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3
5 carbon atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from O, N and S,
wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, -OR^a,
-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a, -C(=O)NR^aR^a,
-C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
10 and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
-C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a,
-C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or
-C₁₋₃alkylR^c;

R^b is H, C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-O-R^a; and

15 Y^2 is -NR^b- or -O-.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^4 is



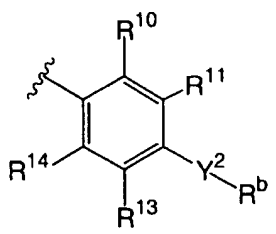
L^3 is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3
20 carbon atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from O, N and S,
wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, -OR^a,
-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a, -C(=O)NR^aR^a,
-C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,

- 19 -

and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-3}alkylNR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)R^c$ or $-C_{1-3}alkylR^c$;

- 5 R^b is H, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyl-O-R^a$; and
 Y^2 is $-NR^b$ - or $-O$ -.

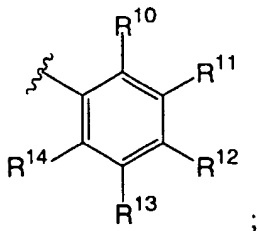
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^4 is



- 10 R^b is H, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyl-O-R^a$; and
 Y^2 is $-NR^a$ - or $-O$ -.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^4 is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising
fused 6-membered rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder
being carbon atoms, with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic,
15 wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^a , NR^aR^a , $C_{1-6}alkyl$ and
 $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^4 is



20

R^{10} is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOR^a$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_nC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylC(=O)OR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$,

- 20 -

-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R¹¹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,
C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
5 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylR^c, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a,
-NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
-C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;
C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a;

10 R¹² is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,
C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
-O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
-NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
15 -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R¹³ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,
C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
-O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
-NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
20 -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; and

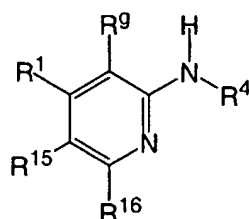
R¹⁴ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,
C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
-O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
25 -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; wherein one of R¹⁰ and R¹² is not H.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
30 ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N,
O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the
heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused

- 21 -

phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OR^a and -NR^aR^a.

Another aspect of the invention relates to a compound having the structure:

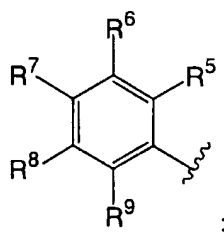


5

or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2.

R¹ is

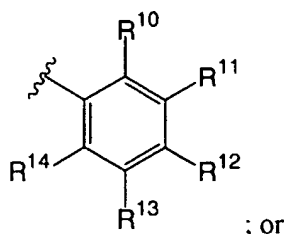


- 10 or R¹ is a naphthyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵; or R¹ is R^e substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵;

- R¹⁵ is, independently, in each instance, R¹⁰, C₁₋₈alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R¹⁰, -(CH₂)_nphenyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰, or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

- 20 R¹⁶ is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, -NH₂, -NHC₁₋₃alkyl, -N(C₁₋₃alkyl)C₁₋₃alkyl or C₁₋₃alkyl;

- 22 -

 R^4 is

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
- 5 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the heterocycle and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, oxo,
- 10 $-OR^d$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^d , $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-NR^d C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^d C_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d , $-NR^d C_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^d , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^d C_{1-6}$ alkyl and $-NR^d C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$; and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are
- 15 substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^d , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d , $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^d$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $NR^d C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)R^f$ or $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl R^f ; or R^4 is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising fused 6-membered rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder being carbon atoms, with at least one of the
- 20 6-membered rings being aromatic, wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^d , NR^dR^d , C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{1-3} haloalkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$; but in no instance is R^4 3,5-ditrifluoromethylphenyl or 3-trifluoromethyl-4-fluorophenyl;

- R^5 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-5} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo,
- 25 nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^d , $-NR^dR^d$, $-NR^d C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^d C_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d , $-NR^d C_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^d , naphthyl, $-CO_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^d C(=O)R^d$, $-NR^d C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^d CO_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C_{1-8}$ alkyl OR^d , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d ,

- 23 -

-S(=O)_n(C₁₋₆alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dS(=O)₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, a phenyl ring substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R⁵ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R⁶ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₅alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -S(C₁₋₆alkyl), a phenyl ring substituted with 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R⁶ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R⁷ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -S(C₁₋₆alkyl); or R⁷ is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle containing a single nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from halo, C₁₋₂haloalkyl and C₁₋₃alkyl;

R⁸ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₅alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -S(C₁₋₆alkyl), a phenyl ring substituted with 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰, or R⁸ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -CO₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C(=O)(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dC(=O)(C₁₋₆alkyl), -NR^dC(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dCO₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -S(=O)_n(C₁₋₆alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,

- 24 -

$-\text{NR}^d\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, a phenyl ring substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} ; or R^9 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} ; or R^9 is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle containing a single nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from halo, $\text{C}_{1-2}\text{haloalkyl}$ and $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{alkyl}$; wherein at least one of R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 and R^9 is $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OC}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$ or $-\text{S}(\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl})$;

R^{10} is independently, at each instance, selected from H, $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$ and $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$; or R^{10} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,

- 25 -

- $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$,
 $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$ and
 $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$; or R^{10} is $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
5 from $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-OR^d$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-SR^d$,
 $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
10 $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$,
 $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$ and
 $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$;
 R^{11} is independently, at each instance, selected from H, $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
15 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-OR^d$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-SR^d$,
 $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$,
 $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$ and
 $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$; or R^{11} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3
25 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo
groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring
containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of
the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by
0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro,
30 $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-OR^d$,
 $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-SR^d$, $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,

- 26 -

- S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 5 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹¹ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
 from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d,
 -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d,
 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹⁰ and R¹¹ together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or
 15 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the
 remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not
 greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by
 H, =O, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 20 -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 25 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H,
 -C₁₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^d,
 -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^dC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 -C(=O)R^f or -C₁₋₃alkylR^f;
 30 R¹² is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d,

- 27 -

- $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
5 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$ and
 $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$; or R^{12} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3
atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo
10 groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring
containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of
the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by
0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$,
15 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$,
20 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$ and
 $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$; or R^{12} is $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
from $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$,
25 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^d)\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^d)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^d\text{R}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d\text{R}^d$ and
30 $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$; wherein if R^{11} or R^{13} is CF_3 , then R^{12} is not F; or R^{11} and R^{12}
together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3
atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long

- 28 -

- as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d,
5 -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
10 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^dC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^f or -C₁₋₃alkylR^f,
15 R¹³ is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
20 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹³ is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
25 monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by
30 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),

- 29 -

- $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$, $-\text{S(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=NR}^d\text{)NR}^d$,
5 $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d$ and
 $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$; or R^{13} is $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
from $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{C(=NR}^d\text{)NR}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$, $-\text{OC(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^d$,
 $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$,
10 $-\text{S(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^d$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=NR}^d\text{)NR}^d$,
 $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d$ and
15 $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$;
 R^{14} is independently, at each instance, selected from H, $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$,
 $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{C(=NR}^d\text{)NR}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$, $-\text{OC(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^d$,
 $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$, $-\text{SR}^d$,
20 $-\text{S(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^d$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$,
 $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)C(=NR}^d\text{)NR}^d$,
 $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{N(R}^d\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^d$, $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^d$ and
25 $-\text{NR}^d\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^d$; or R^{14} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3
atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo
groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring
containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of
30 the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by
0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-\text{C(=O)}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C(=O)O}(\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl})$, $-\text{C(=O)NR}^d$, $-\text{C(=NR}^d\text{)NR}^d$, $-\text{OR}^d$,

- 30 -

- OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 5 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹⁴ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
 from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d,
 10 -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d,
 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 15 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d;

R^d is independently, at each instance, H, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

R^e is a heterocycle selected from the group of thiophene, pyrrole,

- 1,3-oxazole, 1,3-thiazole, 1,3,4-oxadiazole, 1,3,4-thiadiazole, 1,2,3-oxadiazole,
 20 1,2,3-thiadiazole, 1H-1,2,3-triazole, isothiazole, 1,2,4-oxadiazole, 1,2,4-
 thiadiazole, 1,2,3,4-oxatriazole, 1,2,3,4-thiatriazole, 1H-1,2,3,4-tetraazole,
 1,2,3,5-oxatriazole, 1,2,3,5-thiatriazole, furan, imidazol-1-yl, imidazol-4-yl, 1,2,4-
 triazol-4-yl, 1,2,4-triazol-5-yl, isoxazol-3-yl, isoxazol-5-yl, pyrazol-3-yl, pyrazol-
 5-yl, thiolane, pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, 4,5-dihydrothiophene, 2-pyrroline,
 25 4,5-dihydrofuran, pyridazine, pyrimidine, pyrazine, 1,2,3-triazine, 1,2,4-triazine,
 1,2,4-triazine, 1,3,5-triazine, pyridine, 2H-3,4,5,6-tetrahydropyran, thiane, 1,2-
 diazaperhydroine, 1,3-diazaperhydroine, piperazine, 1,3-oxazaperhydroine,
 morpholine, 1,3-thiazaperhydroine, 1,4-thiazaperhydroine, piperidine, 2H-3,4-
 dihydropyran, 2,3-dihydro-4H-thiin, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridine, 2H-5,6-
 30 dihydropyran, 2,3-dihydro-6H-thiin, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridine, 3,4,5,6-
 tetrahydropyridine, 4H-pyran, 4H-thiin, 1,4-dihydropyridine, 1,4-dithiane, 1,4-
 dioxane, 1,4-oxathiane, 1,2-oxazolidine, 1,2-thiazolidine, pyrazolidine, 1,3-

- 31 -

oxazolidine, 1,3-thiazolidine, imidazolidine, 1,2,4-oxadiazolidine, 1,3,4-oxadiazolidine, 1,2,4-thiadiazolidine, 1,3,4-thiadiazolidine, 1,2,4-triazolidine, 2-imidazoline, 3-imidazoline, 2-pyrazoline, 4-imidazoline, 2,3-dihydroisothiazole, 4,5-dihydroisoxazole, 4,5-dihydroisothiazole, 2,5-dihydroisoxazole, 2,5-dihydroisothiazole, 2,3-dihydroisoxazole, 4,5-dihydrooxazole, 2,3-dihydrooxazole, 2,5-dihydrooxazole, 4,5-dihydrothiazole, 2,3-dihydrothiazole,, 2,5-dihydrothiazole, 1,3,4-oxathiazolidine, 1,4,2-oxathiazolidine, 2,3-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 2,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 2,3-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazole, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazole, 2,3-dihydro-10 [1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4] thidiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,3,4]oxadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,3,4]thiadiazole, [1,4,2]oxathiazole, [1,3,4]oxathiazole, 1,3,5-triazaperhydroine, 1,2,4-triazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-dithiazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-dioxazaperhydroine, 1,3,5-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,2,5-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,4-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,5-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,2,5-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,4-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,4,3-oxathiazaperhydroine, 20 1,4,2-oxathiazaperhydroine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyrazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2]thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,4]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,4]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,4]thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,4]thiazine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-[1,3,5]triazine, 2,3,4,5-

- 32 -

tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dithiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,3]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,3]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,3]oxathiazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]oxathiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,3]oxathiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,2]oxathiazine, 4,5-dihydropyridine, 1,6-dihydropyridine, 5,6-dihydropyridine, 2H-pyran, 2H-thiin, 3,6-dihydropyridine, 2,3-dihydropyridazine, 2,5-dihydropyridazine, 4,5-dihydropyridazine, 1,2-dihydropyridazine, 2,3-dihydropyrimidine, 2,5-dihydropyrimidine, 5,6-dihydropyrimidine, 3,6-dihydropyrimidine, 4,5-dihydropyrazine, 5,6-dihydropyrazine, 3,6-dihydropyrazine, 4,5-dihydropyrazine, 1,4-dihydropyrazine, 1,4-dithiin, 1,4-dioxin, 2H-1,2-oxazine, 6H-1,2-oxazine, 4H-1,2-oxazine, 2H-1,3-oxazine, 4H-1,3-oxazine, 6H-1,3-oxazine, 2H-1,4-oxazine, 4H-1,4-oxazine, 2H-1,3-thiazine, 2H-1,4-thiazine, 4H-1,2-thiazine, 6H-1,3-thiazine, 4H-1,4-thiazine, 2H-1,2-thiazine, 6H-1,2-thiazine, 1,4-oxathiin, 2H,5H-1,2,3-triazine, 1H,4H-1,2,3-triazine, 4,5-dihydro-1,2,3-triazine, 1H,6H-1,2,3-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,2,3-triazine, 2,3-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 3H,6H-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,6H-1,2,4-triazine, 3,4-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,4H-1,2,4-triazine, 5,6-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 4,5-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 2H,5H-1,2,4-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,4H-1,3,5-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,3,5-triazine, 1,4,2-dithiazine, 1,4,2-dioxazine, 2H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, 2H-1,3,5-oxadiazine, 6H-1,2,5-oxadiazine, 4H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, 4H-1,3,5-oxadiazine, 4H-1,2,5-oxadiazine, 2H-1,3,5-thiadiazine, 6H-1,2,5-thiadiazine, 4H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 4H-1,3,5-thiadiazine, 4H-1,2,5-thiadiazine, 2H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 6H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 6H-

- 33 -

1,3,4-oxadiazine and 1,4,2-oxathiazine, wherein the heterocycle is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring containing 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from N, O and S;

R^f is phenyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 groups selected from halo, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, $-OR^d$ and $-NR^dR^d$; or R^f is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the carbon atoms of the heterocycle are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, $-OR^d$ and $-NR^dR^d$; and

R^g is hydrogen or $-CH_3$.

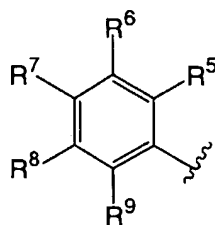
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^{16} is halo, $-NH_2$, $-NHC_{1-3}$ alkyl, $-N(C_{1-3}$ alkyl) C_{1-3} alkyl or C_{1-3} alkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^{10} is independently, at each instance, C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-OR^d$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^d , $-SR^d$, $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^dR^d and $-NR^dC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^d ; or R^{10} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,

- 34 -

- C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d,
 -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 5 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹⁰ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
 from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 10 -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d,
 -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d,
 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 15 -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
 -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R¹ is



20

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R⁷ is C₁₋₅alkyl, halo or C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

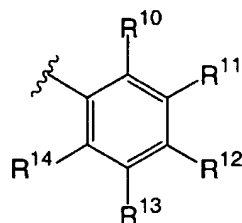
25 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R¹ is naphthyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
substituents independently selected from R⁵.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R¹ is R^c substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R⁵.

- 35 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is R^e substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
5 embodiments above and below, R^4 is



In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^{10} and R^{11} together are a saturated or unsaturated
3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with
10 the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is
substituted by H, =O, C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
-C(=O)(C_{1-8} alkyl), -C(=O)O(C_{1-8} alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d,
-OC(=O)(C_{1-8} alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C_{1-8} alkyl),
15 -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C_{1-8} alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C_{1-8} alkyl),
-S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8} alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8} alkyl),
-S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8} alkyl),
-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8} alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
-N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C_{1-8} alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
20 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H,
-C₁₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^d,
-C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O) C_{1-6} alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^dC(=O) C_{1-6} alkyl,
-C(=O)R^f or -C₁₋₃alkylR^f; or

R^{11} and R^{12} together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge
25 containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms
being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2,
wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O,
 C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C_{1-8} alkyl),

- 36 -

$-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-OR^d$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-SR^d$, $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
5 $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$,
 $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$ and
 $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H,
 $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^d$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^d$,
10 $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-3}alkylNR^dC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-C(=O)R^f$ or $-C_{1-3}alkylR^f$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
 ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is
 15 optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge
 containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms
 being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2,
 wherein the carbon atoms of the heterocycle and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2
 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro,
 20 cyano, oxo, $-OR^d$, $-S(=O)_nC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-OC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-OC_{1-6}alkylC(=O)OR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{1-4}haloalkyl$,
 $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)NR^dC_{1-6}alkyl$ and $-NR^dC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$; and saturated
 carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O; and any nitrogen atoms in
 25 the bridge are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^d$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^dR^d$,
 $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^d$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-C_{1-3}alkylNR^dC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)R^f$ or $-C_{1-3}alkylR^f$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
 30 ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is
 optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge
 containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms

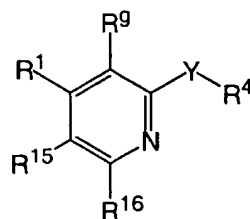
- 37 -

being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the heterocycle and bridge are substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, oxo, -OR^d, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d,
 5 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -OC₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^dC₁₋₆alkyl and -NR^dC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O; and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d,
 10 -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^dR^d, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^dC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^f or -C₁₋₃alkylR^f.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising fused 6-membered rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder
 15 being carbon atoms, with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic, wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^d, NR^dR^d, C₁₋₆alkyl and C₁₋₃haloalkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising
 20 fused 6-membered rings, containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder being carbon atoms, with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic, wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^d, NR^dR^d, C₁₋₆alkyl and C₁₋₃haloalkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O.

Another aspect of the invention relates to a compound having the
 25 structure:



or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

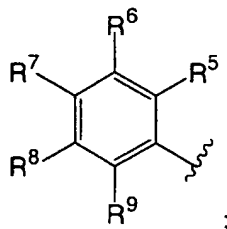
n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;

- 38 -

o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;

Y is NH, O or S;

R¹ is



- 5 or R¹ is a naphthyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵; or R¹ is R^e substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵;
- R¹⁵ is, independently, in each instance, R¹⁰, C₁₋₈alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R¹⁰, -(CH₂)_nphenyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
- 10 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰, or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently
- 15 selected from R¹⁰;
- R¹⁶ is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, -NH₂, -NHC₁₋₃alkyl, -N(C₁₋₃alkyl)C₁₋₃alkyl or C₁₋₃alkyl;
- R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
- 20 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
- 25 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,

- 39 -

- $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
5 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
10 cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
15 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$; and the ring and
bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups; but in no instance is
 R^4 3,5-ditrifluoromethylphenyl or 3-trifluoromethyl-4-fluorophenyl;
25 R^5 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-5}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-OC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$,
 $-NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, naphthyl,
 $-CO_2(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC(=O)R^d$,
 $-NR^dC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dCO_2(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-C_{1-8}alkylOR^d$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^dR^d$,
30 $-S(=O)_n(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dS(=O)_2(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$, a
phenyl ring substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from
 R^{10} ; or R^5 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle

- 40 -

containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R⁶ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₅alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d,
 5 -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -S(C₁₋₆alkyl), a phenyl ring substituted with 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R⁶ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

10 R⁷ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -S(C₁₋₆alkyl); or R⁷ is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle containing a single
 15 nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from halo, C₁₋₂haloalkyl and C₁₋₃alkyl;

R⁸ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₅alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d,
 20 -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -S(C₁₋₆alkyl), a phenyl ring substituted with 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰, or R⁸ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d,
 25 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -CO₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C(=O)(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dC(=O)(C₁₋₆alkyl), -NR^dC(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dCO₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -S(=O)_n(C₁₋₆alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
 30 -NR^dS(=O)₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d or a -(CR^qR^q)_ophenyl wherein the phenyl is substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R⁹ is -(CR^qR^q)_oHet wherein Het is a saturated or unsaturated

- 41 -

- 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R⁹ is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle containing a single nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from halo, C₁₋₂haloalkyl and C₁₋₃alkyl; wherein at least one of R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸ and R⁹ is C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -NR^dC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^d, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^dR^d or -S(C₁₋₆alkyl);
- 10 R¹⁰ is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
- 15 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹⁰ is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
- 20 monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by
- 25 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 30 -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and

- 42 -

- NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹⁰ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d,
5 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d,
-S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
-S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d,
-N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and
10 -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d;
R^d is independently, at each instance, H, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;
R^e is a heterocycle selected from the group of thiophene, pyrrole,
1,3-oxazole, 1,3-thiazole, 1,3,4-oxadiazole, 1,3,4-thiadiazole, 1,2,3-oxadiazole,
1,2,3-thiadiazole, 1H-1,2,3-triazole, isothiazole, 1,2,4-oxadiazole, 1,2,4-
15 thiadiazole, 1,2,3,4-oxatriazole, 1,2,3,4-thiatriazole, 1H-1,2,3,4-tetraazole,
1,2,3,5-oxatriazole, 1,2,3,5-thiatriazole, furan, imidazol-1-yl, imidazol-4-yl, 1,2,4-
triazol-4-yl, 1,2,4-triazol-5-yl, isoxazol-3-yl, isoxazol-5-yl, pyrazol-3-yl, pyrazol-
5-yl, thiolane, pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, 4,5-dihydrothiophene, 2-pyrroline,
4,5-dihydrofuran, pyridazine, pyrimidine, pyrazine, 1,2,3-triazine, 1,2,4-triazine,
20 1,2,4-triazine, 1,3,5-triazine, pyridine, 2H-3,4,5,6-tetrahydropyran, thiane, 1,2-
diazaperhydroine, 1,3-diazaperhydroine, piperazine, 1,3-oxazaperhydroine,
morpholine, 1,3-thiazaperhydroine, 1,4-thiazaperhydroine, piperidine, 2H-3,4-
dihydropyran, 2,3-dihydro-4H-thiin, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridine, 2H-5,6-
dihydropyran, 2,3-dihydro-6H-thiin, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridine, 3,4,5,6-
25 tetrahydropyridine, 4H-pyran, 4H-thiin, 1,4-dihydropyridine, 1,4-dithiane, 1,4-
dioxane, 1,4-oxathiane, 1,2-oxazolidine, 1,2-thiazolidine, pyrazolidine, 1,3-
oxazolidine, 1,3-thiazolidine, imidazolidine, 1,2,4-oxadiazolidine, 1,3,4-
oxadiazolidine, 1,2,4-thiadiazolidine, 1,3,4-thiadiazolidine, 1,2,4-triazolidine, 2-
imidazoline, 3-imidazoline, 2-pyrazoline, 4-imidazoline, 2,3-dihydroisothiazole,
30 4,5-dihydroisoxazole, 4,5-dihydroisothiazole, 2,5-dihydroisoxazole, 2,5-
dihydroisothiazole, 2,3-dihydroisoxazole, 4,5-dihydrooxazole, 2,3-
dihydrooxazole, 2,5-dihydrooxazole, 4,5-dihydrothiazole, 2,3-dihydrothiazole,,

2,5-dihydrothiazole, 1,3,4-oxathiazolidine, 1,4,2-oxathiazolidine, 2,3-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 2,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 2,3-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazole, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,3,4]oxadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,3,4]thiadiazole, [1,4,2]oxathiazole, [1,3,4]oxathiazole, 1,3,5-triazaperhydroine, 1,2,4-triazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-dithiazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-dioxazaperhydroine, 1,3,5-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,2,5-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,4-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,5-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,2,5-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,4-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,4,3-oxathiazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-oxathiazaperhydroine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyrazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2]thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,4]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,4]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,4]thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,4]thiazine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-[1,3,5]triazine, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dithiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-

- 44 -

[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,3]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,3]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,3]oxathiazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]oxathiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,3]oxathiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,2]oxathiazine, 4,5-dihydropyridine, 1,6-dihydropyridine, 5,6-dihydropyridine, 2H-pyran, 2H-thiin, 3,6-dihydropyridine, 2,3-dihydropyridazine, 2,5-dihydropyridazine, 4,5-dihydropyridazine, 1,2-dihydropyridazine, 2,3-dihydropyrimidine, 2,5-dihydropyrimidine, 5,6-dihydropyrimidine, 3,6-dihydropyrimidine, 4,5-dihydropyrazine, 5,6-dihydropyrazine, 3,6-dihydropyrazine, 4,5-dihydropyrazine, 1,4-dihydropyrazine, 1,4-dithiin, 1,4-dioxin, 2H-1,2-oxazine, 6H-1,2-oxazine, 4H-1,2-oxazine, 2H-1,3-oxazine, 4H-1,3-oxazine, 6H-1,3-oxazine, 2H-1,4-oxazine, 4H-1,4-oxazine, 2H-1,3-thiazine, 2H-1,4-thiazine, 4H-1,2-thiazine, 6H-1,3-thiazine, 4H-1,4-thiazine, 2H-1,2-thiazine, 6H-1,2-thiazine, 1,4-oxathiin, 2H,5H-1,2,3-triazine, 1H,4H-1,2,3-triazine, 4,5-dihydro-1,2,3-triazine, 1H,6H-1,2,3-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,2,3-triazine, 2,3-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 3H,6H-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,6H-1,2,4-triazine, 3,4-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,4H-1,2,4-triazine, 5,6-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 4,5-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 2H,5H-1,2,4-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,4H-1,3,5-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,3,5-triazine, 1,4,2-dithiazine, 1,4,2-dioxazine, 2H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, 2H-1,3,5-oxadiazine, 6H-1,2,5-oxadiazine, 4H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, 4H-1,3,5-oxadiazine, 4H-1,2,5-oxadiazine, 2H-1,3,5-thiadiazine, 6H-1,2,5-thiadiazine, 4H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 4H-1,3,5-thiadiazine, 4H-1,2,5-thiadiazine, 2H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 6H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 6H-1,3,4-oxadiazine and 1,4,2-oxathiazine, wherein the heterocycle is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring containing 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from N, O and S;

R^f is phenyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 groups selected from halo, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OR^d and -NR^dR^d; or R^f is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently

- 45 -

selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the carbon atoms of the heterocycle are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected

5 from halo, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OR^d and -NR^dR^d;

R^b is hydrogen or -CH₃;

R^m is independently at each instance H or Rⁿ;

Rⁿ is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, phenyl or benzyl;

R^q is independently in each instance H, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

10 15

R^s is Rⁿ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^q.

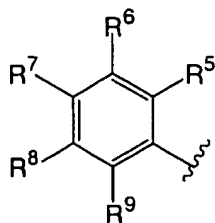
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound

20 embodiments above and below, Y is NH.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is O.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is S.

25 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹ is



- 46 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is C_{1-5} alkyl, halo or C_{1-4} haloalkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is a naphthyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is R^e substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 ;

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^{15} is $-(CH_2)_n$ phenyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^{15} is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^{15} is C_{1-8} alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R^{10} .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^{15} is selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-OR^d$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-SR^d$, $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^d)S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$ and $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$; or R^{10} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered

- 47 -

monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d; or R¹⁰ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^dR^d, -C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -OR^d, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^dR^d, -OC(=O)N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^d, -SR^d, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)C(=O)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)C(=NR^d)NR^dR^d, -N(R^d)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^d)S(=O)₂NR^dR^d, -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylNR^dR^d and -NR^dC₂₋₆alkylOR^d.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹⁶ is, independently, in each instance, halo, -NH₂, -NHC₁₋₃alkyl, -N(C₁₋₃alkyl)C₁₋₃alkyl or C₁₋₃alkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is an unsaturated 6-membered ring containing 0 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0,

- 48 -

- 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
5 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s,
10 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl
15 substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m,
20 -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s,
25 -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s; and the ring and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.
- 30 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused

- 49 -

- with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl,
- 5 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
- 10 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
- 15 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
- 20 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
- 25 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
- 30 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s; and the ring and

- 50 -

bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups; but in no instance is R⁴ 3,5-ditrifluoromethylphenyl or 3-trifluoromethyl-4-fluorophenyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 6-membered ring
5 containing 0 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused with a
saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0 atoms selected from O,
N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O
and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0,
1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
10 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
-OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
-OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
15 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s,
-C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s,
-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s,
-S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
20 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s,
-N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl
substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
-C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ,
25 -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m,
-SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m,
-N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
30 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s,
-C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s,
-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s,

- 51 -

-S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s; and the ring and
 5 bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups; but in no instance is
 R⁴ 3,5-ditrifluoromethylphenyl or 3-trifluoromethyl-4-fluorophenyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
 ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused
 10 with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms
 selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 15 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 20 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 25 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 30 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,

- 52 -

$-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$,
5 $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$; and the ring and
bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups; but in no instance is
10 R^4 3,5-ditrifluoromethylphenyl or 3-trifluoromethyl-4-fluorophenyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^9 is H.

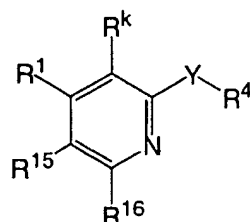
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^9 is independently, at each instance, $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
15 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-OC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dC_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylNR^dR^d$ or
 $-NR^dC_{2-6}alkylOR^d$, $-CO_2(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)NR^dR^d$,
 $-NR^dC(=O)(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-NR^dC(=O)NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dCO_2(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-C_{1-8}alkylOR^d$,
 $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^dR^d$, $-S(=O)_n(C_{1-6}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^dR^d$, $-NR^dS(=O)_2(C_{1-6}alkyl)$ or
20 $-OC(=O)NR^dR^d$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^9 is a $-(CR^qR^q)_o$ phenyl wherein the phenyl is
substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^9 is $-(CR^qR^q)_o$ Het wherein Het is a saturated or
25 unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected
from R^{10} ; or R^9 is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle
containing a single nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2
30 substituents independently selected from halo, $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$ and $C_{1-3}alkyl$.

Another aspect of the invention relates to a compound having the
structure:

- 53 -

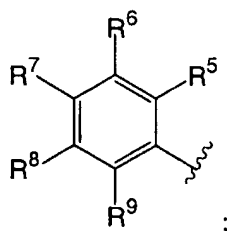


or any pharmaceutically-acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

Y is O or S;

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2.

5 R¹ is

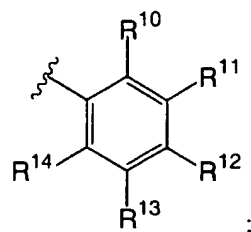


or R¹ is a naphthyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵; or R¹ is R¹ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵;

10 R¹⁵ is, independently, in each instance, R¹⁰, C₁₋₈alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R¹⁰, -(CH₂)_nphenyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰, or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or
 15 unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, the heterocycle and bridge being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

20 R¹⁶ is, independently, in each instance, H, halo, -NH₂, -NHC₁₋₃alkyl, -N(C₁₋₃alkyl)C₁₋₃alkyl, -OC₁₋₃alkyl, -C₁₋₂haloalkyl, -OC₁₋₂haloalkyl or C₁₋₃alkyl;

- 54 -

 R^4 is

- wherein when R^1 is bromophenyl, methylphenyl or trifluoromethylphenyl, R^4 is not trifluoromethylphenyl or trifluoromethylhalophenyl; or R^4 is a saturated or
- 5 unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein each of the carbon atoms of the heterocycle is substituted by H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, oxo, $-OR^h$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$,
- 10 $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^h C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^h C_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-NR^h C_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^h C_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^h C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$; and each of the available nitrogen atoms in the heterocycle are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$,
- 15 $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $NR^h C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)R^j$ or $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl IR^j ; or R^4 is an 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms selected from S and O with the remainder being carbon atoms, wherein each of the carbon atoms of the ring is substituted by H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, oxo, $-OR^h$,
- 20 $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^h C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^h C_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-NR^h C_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^h C_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^h C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$; and any available nitrogen atoms in the ring are
- 25 substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $NR^h C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)R^j$ or $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl IR^j ;

- 55 -

R^5 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-5} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, naphthyl, $-CO_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC(=O)R^h$,
 5 $-NR^hC(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hCO_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C_{1-8}$ alkylOR^h, $-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-S(=O)_n(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hS(=O)_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-OC(=O)NR^hR^h$, a phenyl ring substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R^5 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3
 10 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R^6 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-5} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h or $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, $-C_{1-8}$ alkylOR^h, $-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-S(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), a phenyl ring substituted with 1, 2, or 3
 15 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R^6 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

R^7 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, bromo, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h,
 20 $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, $-C_{1-8}$ alkylOR^h, $-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h or $-S(C_{1-6}$ alkyl); or R^7 is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle containing a single nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from halo, C_{1-2} haloalkyl and C_{1-3} alkyl;

R^8 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-5} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^h, $-C_{1-8}$ alkylOR^h,
 25 $-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^hR^h, $-S(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), a phenyl ring substituted with 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰, or R^8 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N
 30 and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰;

- 56 -

- R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h or $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-CO_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC(=O)(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-NR^hC(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hCO_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-C_{1-8}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-S(=O)_n(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hS(=O)_2(C_{1-6}$ alkyl), $-OC(=O)NR^hR^h$, a phenyl ring substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} ; or R^9 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S substituted with 0, 1, 2, or 3 substituents independently selected from R^{10} ; wherein at least one of R^5 , R^6 , R^7 , R^8 and R^9 is C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-8}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h or $-S(C_{1-6}$ alkyl); or R^9 is a saturated or unsaturated 4- or 5-membered ring heterocycle containing a single nitrogen atom, wherein the ring is substituted with 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from halo, C_{1-2} haloalkyl and C_{1-3} alkyl;
- R^{10} is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$, $-OR^h$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-OC(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-SR^h$, $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}$ alkyl), $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h and $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h ; or R^{10} is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1 or 2 atoms selected from N, O and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O

- 57 -

- and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
- C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h,
- 5 -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
- 10 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹⁰ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
 from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h,
- 15 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and
- 20 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h;
- R¹¹ is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h,
- 25 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and
- 30 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹¹ is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
 monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3
 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo

- 58 -

- groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
- 5 -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 10 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹¹ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h,
- 15 -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
- 20 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h;
- R¹² is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h,
- 25 -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
- 30 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹² is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3

- 59 -

- atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by
- 5 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹² is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 15 -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 20 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h;
- R¹³ is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 25 -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
- 30 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹³ is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered

- 60 -

monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, wherein the ring is fused with 0 or 1 benzo groups and 0 or 1 saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S; wherein the carbon atoms of

5 the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl),

10 -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹³ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected

15 from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),

20 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h;

R¹⁴ is independently, at each instance, selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl,

25 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),

30 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h;

- 61 -

- NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic or 6-, 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 1 or 2 atoms selected from N, O and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h; or R¹⁴ is C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h;
- R^h is independently, at each instance, H, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl, the phenyl, benzyl and C₁₋₆alkyl being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OC₁₋₄alkyl, -NH₂, -NHC₁₋₄alkyl, -N(C₁₋₄alkyl)C₁₋₄alkyl;
- Rⁱ is a heterocycle selected from the group of thiophene, pyrrole, 1,3-oxazole, 1,3-thiazol-5-yl, 1,3,4-oxadiazole, 1,3,4-thiadiazole, 1,2,3-oxadiazole, 1,2,3-thiadiazole, 1H-1,2,3-triazole, isothiazole, 1,2,4-oxadiazole, 1,2,4-

- 62 -

thiadiazole, 1,2,3,4-oxatriazole, 1,2,3,4-thiatriazole, 1H-1,2,3,4-tetraazole,
 1,2,3,5-oxatriazole, 1,2,3,5-thiatriazole, furan, imidazol-1-yl, imidazol-3-yl,
 imidazol-4-yl, 1,2,4-triazole, 1,2,4-triazole, isoxazole, pyrazol-3-yl, pyrazol-4-yl,
 pyrazol-5-yl, thiolane, pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuran, 4,5-dihydrothiophene, 2-
 5 pyrroline, 4,5-dihydrofuran, pyridazine, pyrimidine, pyrazine, 1,2,3-triazine,
 1,2,4-triazine, 1,2,4-triazine, 1,3,5-triazine, pyridine, 2H-3,4,5,6-tetrahydropyran,
 thiane, 1,2-diazaperhydroine, 1,3-diazaperhydroine, piperazine, 1,3-
 oxazaperhydroine, morpholine, 1,3-thiazaperhydroine, 1,4-thiazaperhydroine,
 piperidine, 2H-3,4-dihydropyran, 2,3-dihydro-4H-thiin, 1,4,5,6-
 10 tetrahydropyridine, 2H-5,6-dihydropyran, 2,3-dihydro-6H-thiin, 1,2,5,6-
 tetrahydropyridine, 3,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridine, 4H-pyran, 4H-thiin, 1,4-
 dihydropyridine, 1,4-dithiane, 1,4-dioxane, 1,4-oxathiane, 1,2-oxazolidine, 1,2-
 thiazolidine, pyrazolidine, 1,3-oxazolidine, 1,3-thiazolidine, imidazolidine, 1,2,4-
 oxadiazolidine, 1,3,4-oxadiazolidine, 1,2,4-thiadiazolidine, 1,3,4-thiadiazolidine,
 15 1,2,4-triazolidine, 2-imidazolin-1-yl, 2-imidazolin-2-yl, 2-imidazolin-5-yl, 3-
 imidazoline, 2-pyrazoline, 4-imidazoline, 2,3-dihydroisothiazole, 4,5-
 dihydroisoxazole, 4,5-dihydroisothiazole, 2,5-dihydroisoxazole, 2,5-
 dihydroisothiazole, 2,3-dihydroisoxazole, 4,5-dihydrooxazole, 2,3-
 dihydrooxazole, 2,5-dihydrooxazole, 4,5-dihydrothiazole, 2,3-dihydrothiazole,,
 20 2,5-dihydrothiazole, 1,3,4-oxathiazolidine, 1,4,2-oxathiazolidine, 2,3-dihydro-1H-
 [1,2,3]triazole, 2,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazole, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazol-1-yl,
 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazol-3-yl, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,3]triazol-5-yl, 2,3-
 dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazole, 4,5-dihydro-1H-[1,2,4]triazole, 2,3-dihydro-
 [1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]thiadiazole,
 25 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]
 thiadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 4,5-
 dihydro-[1,2,4]oxadiazole, 2,5-dihydro-[1,2,4]thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,2,4]
 thiadiazole, 4,5-dihydro-[1,2,4] thiadiazole, 2,3-dihydro-[1,3,4]oxadiazole, 2,3-
 dihydro-[1,3,4]thiadiazole, [1,4,2]oxathiazole, [1,3,4]oxathiazole, 1,3,5-
 30 triazaperhydroine, 1,2,4-triazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-dithiazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-
 dioxazaperhydroine, 1,3,5-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,2,5-oxadiazaperhydroine,
 1,3,4-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,5-thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,2,5-

thiadiazaperhydroine, 1,3,4-oxadiazaperhydroine, 1,4,3-oxathiazaperhydroine, 1,4,2-oxathiazaperhydroine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridazine, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydropyrimidine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyrazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydropyrazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2]thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2] thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3]oxazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,4]oxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,4]oxazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3]thiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,4]thiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,4]thiazine, 1,2,3,6-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-[1,3,5]triazine, 2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 1,4,5,6-tetrahydro-[1,2,4]triazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]dithiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,2]dioxazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,3,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,3]oxadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3,4]oxadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]oxadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,3]thiadiazine, 3,6-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-4H-[1,3,4]thiadiazine, 3,4-dihydro-2H-[1,2,5]thiadiazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,3]oxathiazine, 5,6-dihydro-[1,4,2]oxathiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,3]oxathiazine, 2,3-dihydro-[1,4,2]oxathiazine, 4,5-dihydropyridine, 1,6-dihydropyridine, 5,6-dihydropyridine, 2H-pyran, 2H-thiin, 3,6-dihydropyridine, 2,3-dihydropyridazine, 2,5-dihydropyridazine, 4,5-dihydropyridazine, 1,2-dihydropyridazine, 1,4-dihydropyrimidin-1-yl, 1,4-dihydropyrimidin-4-yl, 1,4-dihydropyrimidin-5-yl, 1,4-dihydropyrimidin-6-yl,

- 64 -

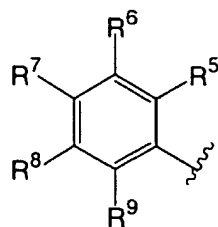
2,3-dihydropyrimidine, 2,5-dihydropyrimidine, 5,6-dihydropyrimidine, 3,6-dihydropyrimidine, 4,5-dihydropyrazine, 5,6-dihydropyrazine, 3,6-dihydropyrazine, 4,5-dihydropyrazine, 1,4-dihydropyrazine, 1,4-dithiin, 1,4-dioxin, 2H-1,2-oxazine, 6H-1,2-oxazine, 4H-1,2-oxazine, 2H-1,3-oxazine, 4H-1,3-oxazine, 6H-1,3-oxazine, 2H-1,4-oxazine, 4H-1,4-oxazine, 2H-1,3-thiazine, 2H-1,4-thiazine, 4H-1,2-thiazine, 6H-1,3-thiazine, 4H-1,4-thiazine, 2H-1,2-thiazine, 6H-1,2-thiazine, 1,4-oxathiin, 2H,5H-1,2,3-triazine, 1H,4H-1,2,3-triazine, 4,5-dihydro-1,2,3-triazine, 1H,6H-1,2,3-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,2,3-triazine, 2,3-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 3H,6H-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,6H-1,2,4-triazine, 3,4-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,4H-1,2,4-triazine, 5,6-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 4,5-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 2H,5H-1,2,4-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,2,4-triazine, 1H,4H-1,3,5-triazine, 1,2-dihydro-1,3,5-triazine, 1,4,2-dithiazine, 1,4,2-dioxazine, 2H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, 2H-1,3,5-oxadiazine, 6H-1,2,5-oxadiazine, 4H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, 4H-1,3,5-oxadiazine, 4H-1,2,5-oxadiazine, 2H-1,3,5-thiadiazine, 6H-1,2,5-thiadiazine, 4H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 4H-1,3,5-thiadiazine, 4H-1,2,5-thiadiazine, 2H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 6H-1,3,4-thiadiazine, 6H-1,3,4-oxadiazine, and 1,4,2-oxathiazine, wherein the heterocycle is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered ring containing 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from N, O and S;

20 R^j is phenyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 groups selected from halo, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, $-OR^h$ and $-NR^hR^h$; or R^j is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the carbon atoms of the heterocycle are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl, $-OR^h$ and $-NR^hR^h$; and

R^k is hydrogen or $-CH_3$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 30 embodiments above and below, R^l is

- 65 -



In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁷ is C₂₋₆alkyl or C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 5 embodiments above and below, R¹ is a naphthyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹ is Rⁱ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R⁵.

10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹ is substituted by one substituent selected from halo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl and C₁₋₅alkyl, and additionally by 0, 1 or 2 substituents independently selected from R⁵.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 15 embodiments above and below, R¹⁵ is H.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹⁵ is R¹⁰, C₁₋₈alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R¹⁰, or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N,
 20 O and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, the heterocycle and bridge being substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R¹⁰; or R¹⁵ is -(CH₂)_nphenyl substituted
 25 by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h,

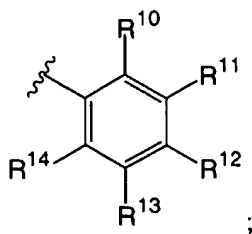
- 66 -

- S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
 5 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h,
 10 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and
 15 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R¹⁶ is H.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R¹⁶ is halo, -NHC₁₋₃alkyl, -N(C₁₋₃alkyl)C₁₋₃alkyl,
 20 -OC₁₋₃alkyl, -C₁₋₂haloalkyl, -OC₁₋₂haloalkyl or C₁₋₃alkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is



- wherein at least one of R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³ and R¹⁴ is other than C₁₋₄haloalkyl or
 25 halo.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, at least one of R¹⁰, R¹¹, R¹², R¹³ and R¹⁴ is -OR^h
 or -NR^hR^h.

- 67 -

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein each of the
- 5 carbon atoms of the heterocycle is substituted by H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, oxo, $-OR^h$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^hC_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^hC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; and saturated
- 10 carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$; and any available nitrogen atoms in the heterocycle are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $NR^hC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)R^j$ or $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl R^j .
- 15 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1 or 2 atoms selected from O, N and S, wherein each of the carbon atoms of the heterocycle is substituted by H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, oxo, $-OR^h$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl,
- 20 $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-NR^hC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^hC_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^hC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by $=O$; and any available nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H,
- 25 $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^h , $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^hR^h , $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl $NR^hC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)R^j$ or $-C_{1-3}$ alkyl R^j .
- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^4 is an 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring,
- 30 containing 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms selected from S and O with the remainder being carbon atoms, wherein each of the carbon atoms of the ring is substituted by H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, oxo, $-OR^h$,

- 68 -

-S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h,
 -OC₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^h, -NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 -C(=O)NR^hC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^hC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be
 5 additionally substituted by =O; and any available nitrogen atoms in the ring are
 substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^h, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^h, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^hR^h, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 -C₁₋₃alkylNR^hC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^j or -C₁₋₃alkylR^j.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 10 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is an 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring,
 containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms selected from S and O with
 the remainder being carbon atoms, wherein at least one of the carbon atoms of the
 ring is substituted by C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, oxo, -OR^h,
 -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h,
 15 -OC₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^h, -NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 -C(=O)NR^hC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^hC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁵ and R⁹ are each independently selected from
 20 H, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -CO₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C(=O)(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -NR^hC(=O)R^h, -NR^hC(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hCO₂(C₁₋₆alkyl), -C₁₋₈alkylOR^h,
 -C₁₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -S(=O)_n(C₁₋₆alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hS(=O)₂(C₁₋₆alkyl) and
 25 -OC(=O)NR^hR^h.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁶ and R⁸ are each independently selected from
 H, C₁₋₅alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h or
 30 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^h, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and -S(C₁₋₆alkyl).

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁷ is independently, at each instance,

- 69 -

C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -C₁₋₈alkylOR^h, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^hR^h or -S(C₁₋₆alkyl).

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 5 embodiments above and below, R¹⁰ and R¹⁴ are each independently selected from
 H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from
 15 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC(=O)NR^hR^h,
 -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h,
 -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 20 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,
 -N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)S(=O)₂NR^hR^h, -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h and
 -NR^hC₂₋₆alkylOR^h.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 25 embodiments above and below, R¹¹ and R¹³ are independently, at each instance,
 selected from H, C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -C(=O)NR^hR^h, -C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h, -OR^h, -OC(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -OC(=O)NR^hR^h, -OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^hR^h,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^h, -SR^h, -S(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂NR^hR^h,
 30 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl), -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -S(=O)₂N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=O)(C₁₋₈alkyl),
 -N(R^h)C(=O)O(C₁₋₈alkyl), -N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h, -N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h,

- 70 -

$-N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$,
 $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected from
 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$, $-OR^h$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^hR^h$,
5 $-OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$, $-SR^h$,
 $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$,
10 $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$ and
 $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$.

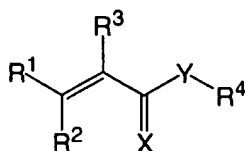
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^{12} is independently, at each instance, selected
 from H, $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 15 $-C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$, $-OR^h$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^hR^h$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$, $-SR^h$,
 $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 20 $-N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$,
 $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$ and
 $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$; or R^{12} is $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 groups selected
 from $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$, $-OR^h$, $-OC(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC(=O)NR^hR^h$,
 25 $-OC(=O)N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$, $-SR^h$,
 $-S(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)(C_{1-8}alkyl)$,
 $-N(R^h)C(=O)O(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)C(=O)NR^hR^h$, $-N(R^h)C(=NR^h)NR^hR^h$,
 30 $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2(C_{1-8}alkyl)$, $-N(R^h)S(=O)_2NR^hR^h$, $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylNR^hR^h$ and
 $-NR^hC_{2-6}alkylOR^h$.

- 71 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is O.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is S.

5 Another aspect of the invention relates to a compound having the structure:



wherein:

X is O, S or NR^m;

10 n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;

o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;

R^m is independently at each instance H or Rⁿ;

Rⁿ is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, phenyl or benzyl;

R^q is independently in each instance H, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 15 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 20 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

R^s is Rⁿ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^q;

R³ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;

25 R⁵ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c

R⁶ is, independently at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,

- 72 -

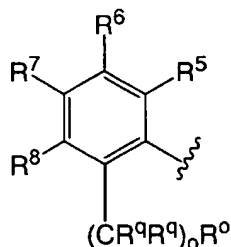
-O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

R⁸ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,

-O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,

5 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m; and

(A) R¹ is



R² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

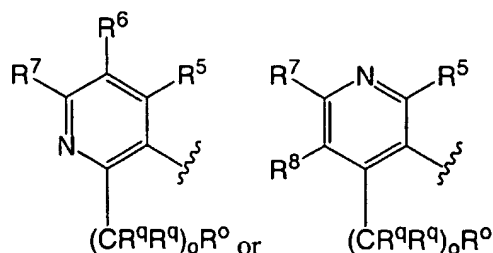
R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or

- 10 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
- 15
- 20
- 25

- 73 -

- cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
5 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
- 15 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
- R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
20 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^P ;
- R^P is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
25 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
30 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and
- Y is O or NH; or

- 74 -

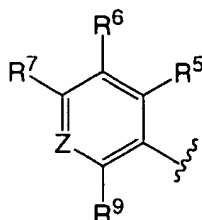
(B) R^1 is R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
- 5 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl,
- 10 C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
- 15 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
- 20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
- 25 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,

- 75 -

- $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
5 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
10 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
15 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p ;
 R^p is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
20 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
25 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and
Y is O or NH; or
(C) R^1 is

- 76 -



R² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

R⁴ is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,

- 77 -

-NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is
 not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-
 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,
 benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-
 3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;

R⁷ is C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br

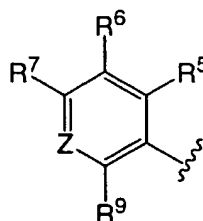
R⁹ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 10 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c;

R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 15 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N; or

(D) R¹ is



20 R² is C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 25 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; or

- 78 -

- R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_6$ phenyl, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or
- R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_6R^r$, wherein R^r is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,

- 79 -

- wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
5 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
10 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
15 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
20 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
25 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;
- 30 R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected

- 80 -

from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
5 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
-S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
10 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
-C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
-OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
-SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
15 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
-N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
-OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
20 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
25 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
-OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
-NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
30 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

R⁷ is C₂₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I, Br;

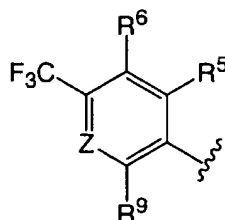
- 81 -

R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m;

5 Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N; or

(E) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, Cl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

10 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 15 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 20 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 25 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m,

- 82 -

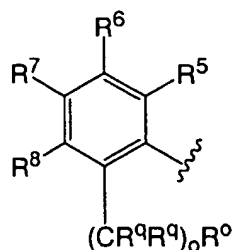
- $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
5 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
10 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; wherein R^4 is
not unsubstituted phenyl;

- R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,
nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$,
15 $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$ or
 $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR^8 or N.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
20 embodiments above and below, 80, wherein:

 R^1 is R^2 is H, $-\text{OR}^m$, halo, $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{haloalkyl}$ or $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
25 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge

- 83 -

- are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the ring and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
- R⁷ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

- 84 -

R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p ;

R^p is independently at each instance C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and

Y is O or NH.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,

- 85 -

$-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
 and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
 cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a phenyl ring that is vicinally fused with a
 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,

- 86 -

- $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$,
 $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
5 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$
and $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-2}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
10 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$,
15 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; and the bridge
20 carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$ or $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 25 embodiments above and below, R^7 is $\text{C}_{1-5}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, I, Br or Cl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 30 embodiments above and below, R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or
 unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms
 selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not
 greater than 1, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2

- 87 -

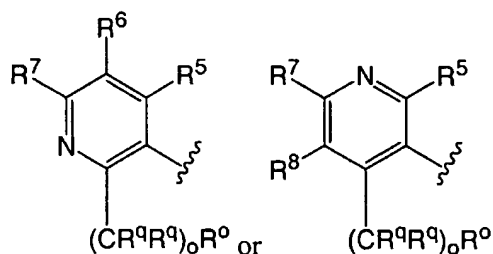
oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or
 5 unsaturated 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 N atoms, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is O.

10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is NH.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^l is



15 R^2 is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 20 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 25 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,

- 88 -

- $-C(=O)OR^S$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^S$, $-OR^S$, $-OC(=O)R^S$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^S$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^S$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^S$,
 $-SR^S$, $-S(=O)R^S$, $-S(=O)_2R^S$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^S$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^S$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^S$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-NR^mR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^S$,
5 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^S$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^S$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^S$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^S$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^S$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
10 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^S$, $-C(=O)OR^S$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^S$,
15 $-OR^S$, $-OC(=O)R^S$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^S$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^S$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^S$, $-SR^S$, $-S(=O)R^S$, $-S(=O)_2R^S$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^S$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^S$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^S$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^S$,
 $-NR^mR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^S$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^S$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^S$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^S$,
20 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^S$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^S$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$; [$C_{1-8}alkyl$,
25 $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I, Br or Cl]
 R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
30 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^P ;

- 89 -

R^P is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 5 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

Y is O or NH.

- 10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 15 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 20 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 25 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 30 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,

- 90 -

- $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
5 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
10 $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a phenyl ring that is vicinally fused with a
 15 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$,
 $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{C(=O)OR}^n$, $-\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
20 $-\text{C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$, $-\text{OC(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^n$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^n$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^n$,
 $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$,
25 $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{C(=O)R}^s$,
 $-\text{C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)R}^s$,
 $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$,
 $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^s$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)R}^s$,
30 $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)C(=NR}^m\text{)NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m\text{)S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$
and $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-2}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,

- 91 -

cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
5 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the bridge
carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

15 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^7 is $C_{1-5}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, I, Br or Cl.

20 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^7 is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or
unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms
25 selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not
greater than 1, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2
oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
30 embodiments above and below, R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or
unsaturated 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 N atoms, wherein the carbon

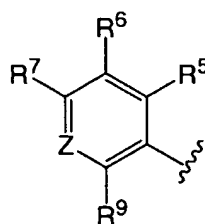
- 92 -

atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is O.

5 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is NH.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is



10 R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;
 R^4 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-
 15 2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, oxo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^m$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^m R^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^m C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^m C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^m R^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^m R^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^m R^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2 R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2 R^s$, $-S(=O)_2 NR^m R^s$, $-S(=O)_2 N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2 N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2 N(R^m)C(=O)NR^m R^s$, $-NR^m R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^m R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^m R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2 R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2 NR^m R^s$, $-NR^m C_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-NR^m C_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2
 20 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^m R^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^m R^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^m R^m$,

- 93 -

- OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 5 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 10 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is
 not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-
 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,
 benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-
 15 3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;
 R⁷ is C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br;
 R⁹ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;
 20 Y is NH; and
 Z is CR⁸ or N.
 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a heterocycle selected from indole, 3H-
 indole, benzo[b]furan, benzothiophene, 1H-indazole, benzimidazole,
 25 benzthiazole, 1H-benzotriazole, 7-quinoline, 8-quinoline, 1,2,3,4-
 tetrahydroquinoline, isoquinoline, cinnoline, phthalazine, quinazoline and
 quinoxaline, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
 independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano,
 -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m,
 30 -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m,
 -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl
 -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,

- 94 -

- OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 5 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m,
 -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ,
 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 15 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 20 embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a heterocycle selected from 6-indole, 7-
 indole, 6-3H-indole, 7-3H-indole, 6-benzo[b]furan, 7-benzo[b]furan, 6-
 benzothiophene, 7-benzothiophene, 6-1H-indazole, 7-1H-indazole,
 benzimidazole, benzthiazole, 1H-benzotriazole, 7-quinoline, 8-quinoline, 7-
 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, 8-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, isoquinolin-7-yl,
 25 isoquinolin-8-yl, 7-cinnoline, 8-cinnoline, phthalazine, 7-quinazoline, 8-
 quinazoline and quinoxaline, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro,
 cyano, -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 30 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl,
 -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,

- 95 -

- OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 5 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2
 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 15 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 20 embodiments above and below, R⁹ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano,
 -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁹ is H.

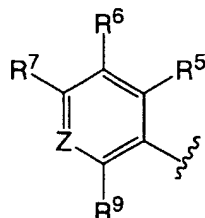
- 25 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, Z is CR⁸.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, Z is N.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 30 embodiments above and below, R⁷ is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R¹ is

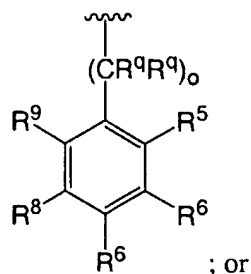
- 96 -



R^2 is C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,

- 5 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or

10 R^2 is



; or

R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is

15 optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
- 20 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,

- 97 -

- $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$,
5 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$,
 $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
10 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$
and $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-2}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
15 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
20 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
25 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $\text{C}_{2-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-5}\text{haloalkyl}$, I, Br;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,
nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
30 $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$ or
 $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$;
Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R² is C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ,

- 5 -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 10 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R² is -(C(R^q)₂)_ophenyl, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,

- 15 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 20 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 25 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 30 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,

- 99 -

- N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 5 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 10 embodiments above and below, R² is -(C(R^q)₂)_oR^r, wherein R^r is a saturated or
 unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms
 independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring
 members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl
 ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
 15 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano,
 nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 20 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s,
 -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s,
 25 -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl
 substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
 30 -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m,
 -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ,

- 100 -

- $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
5 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$;

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a phenyl ring that is vicinally fused with a
 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
20 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
25 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
30 and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
 cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,

- 101 -

- OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 5 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

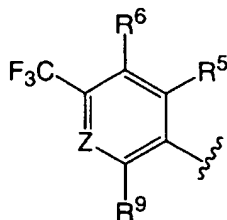
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁷ is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 10 embodiments above and below, R⁹ is H.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Z is CR⁸.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Z is N.

- 15 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R¹ is



R² is H, -OR^m, Cl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

- R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
 20 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
 -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -ORⁿ, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 25 -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,

- 102 -

- $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
10 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is not unsubstituted
15 phenyl;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
20 Y is NH; and
Z is CR^8 or N.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the
25 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted
by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$,
halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
30 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,

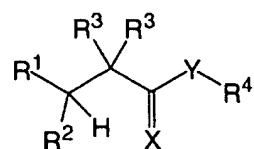
- 103 -

$-C(=O)OR^S$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^S$, $-OR^S$, $-OC(=O)R^S$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^S$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^S$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^S$,
 $-SR^S$, $-S(=O)R^S$, $-S(=O)_2R^S$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^S$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^S$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^S$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-NR^mR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^S$,
5 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^S$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^S$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^S$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^S$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^S$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^S$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
10 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$;

15 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, Z is CR^8 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, Z is N.

Another aspect of the invention relates to a compound having the
20 structure:



wherein:

X is O, S or NR^m ;
n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;
25 o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;
 R^m is independently at each instance H or R^n ;
 R^n is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, phenyl or benzyl;
 R^q is independently in each instance H, $C_{1-4}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
30 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,

- 104 -

- OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 5 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

R⁵ is Rⁿ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^q;

R³ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;

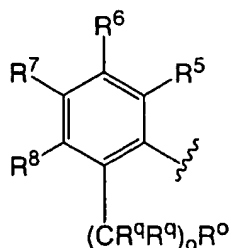
- R⁵ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 10 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c

R⁶ is, independently at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or

- 15 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

R⁸ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m; and

(A) R¹ is



20

R² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

- R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 25 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,

- 105 -

- $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
5 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
10 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
15 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
20 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
25 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
30 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or

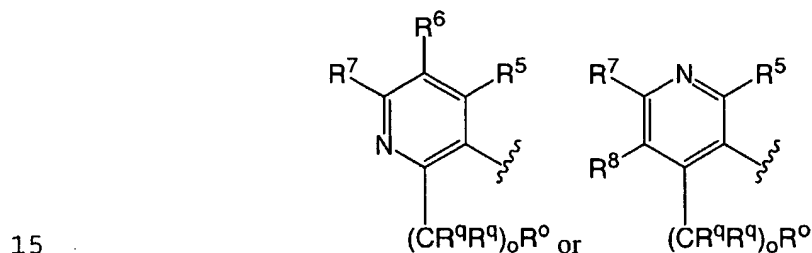
- 106 -

4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p ;

- 5 R^p is independently at each instance C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 10 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and

Y is O or NH; or

(B) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 20 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,

- 107 -

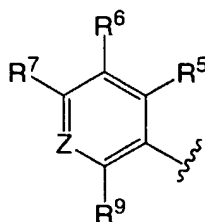
- $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
10 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
15 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
20 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
25 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
30 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p ;

- 108 -

R^p is independently at each instance C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m or $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m ; and

Y is O or NH; or

10 (C) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^4 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or

11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from

15 O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, oxo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^m$, $-S(=O)_nC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^mC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^mC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s , $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2

- 109 -

- groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 5 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is
 not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-
 15 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,
 benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-
 3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;

R⁷ is C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br

- R⁹ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 20 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c;

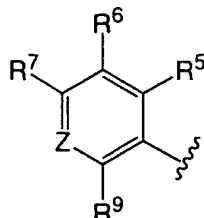
- R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 25 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N; or

(D) R¹ is

- 110 -



- R^2 is C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or
- 10 R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_o$ phenyl, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
- 15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
- 20 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl
- 25 substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,

- 111 -

- S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 5 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 10 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; or
 R² is -(C(R^q)₂)₆R^r, wherein R^r is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or
 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently
 selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,
 wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle
 15 or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently
 selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 20 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 25 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 30 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,

- 112 -

- $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
5 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
15 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
20 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
25 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
30 and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,

- 113 -

- $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)OR}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)OR}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
5 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C(=NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^m)\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)OR}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
10 $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{C(=NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N(R}^m)\text{S(=O)}_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

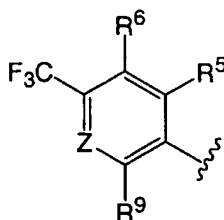
R^7 is $\text{C}_{2-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-5}\text{haloalkyl}$, I, Br;

- R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,
15 nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{O-C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{O-C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{O-C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{-C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{-C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$ or
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{-C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR^8 or N; or

- 20 (E) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-\text{OR}^m$, Cl, $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{haloalkyl}$ or $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$;

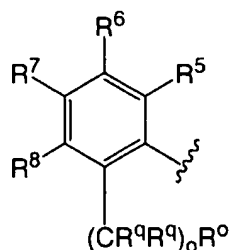
- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
25 not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-\text{C(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C(=NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{OC(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{OC(=O)NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{OC(=O)N(R}^m)\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S(=O)R}^n$, $-\text{S(=O)}_2\text{R}^n$,

- 114 -

- $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
10 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
20 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is
25 not unsubstituted phenyl;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
30 Y is NH; and
Z is CR^8 or N.

- 115 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- 5 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
- 10 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
- 20
- 25

- 116 -

- $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$,
5 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; and the ring
10 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$,
 $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$ or $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$;
 R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
15 monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p ;
20 R^p is independently at each instance $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano,
nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
25 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$ or $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; and
Y is O or NH.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
30 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused
with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms

- 117 -

- selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
- 5 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
- 10 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
- 15 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
- 20 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
- 25 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
- 30 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^4 is a phenyl ring that is vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,

- 119 -

$-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; and the bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$,
 5 $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$ or $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is $\text{C}_{1-5}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, I, Br or Cl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

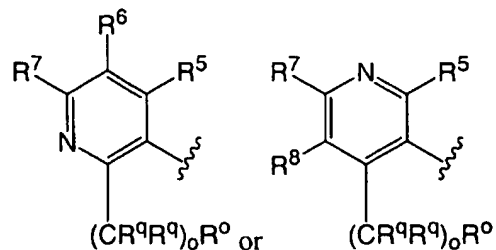
10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2
 15 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 N atoms, wherein the carbon
 20 atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is O.

25 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is NH.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is



- 120 -

R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,

- 121 -

-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

R⁷ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
5 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
-NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m; [C₁₋₈alkyl,
C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I, Br or Cl]

R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
10 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p;

R^p is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano,
15 nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
-OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
-OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
20 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

Y is O or NH.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
25 ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is vicinally fused
with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms
selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl,
30 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,

- 122 -

- $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
10 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
20 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
25 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a phenyl ring that is vicinally fused with a
 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 30 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,

- 123 -

- C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 5 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 10 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 15 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 20 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 25 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the bridge
 carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁷ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 30 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R⁷ is C₁₋₅alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, I, Br or Cl.

- 124 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^7 is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

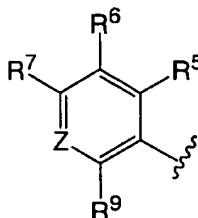
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or
 5 unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered monocyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 N atoms, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^p .

15 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is O.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Y is NH.

20 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^4 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or
 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from
 25 O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, oxo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl,

- 125 -

- halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^m$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)NR^mC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-NR^mC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
5 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2
groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is
not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-
25 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,
benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-
3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;

R^7 is $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I or Br;

R^9 is H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,

- 30 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;

Y is NH; and

- 126 -

Z is CR⁸ or N.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a heterocycle selected from indole, 3H-indole, benzo[b]furan, benzothiophene, 1H-indazole, benzimidazole, benzthiazole, 1H-benzotriazole, 7-quinoline, 8-quinoline, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, isoquinoline, cinnoline, phthalazine, quinazoline and quinoxaline, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -C(=NR^m)NR^mRⁿ, -ORⁿ, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mRⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylORⁿ, -SRⁿ, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mRⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mRⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mRⁿ, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁴ is a heterocycle selected from 6-indole, 7-

- 127 -

- indole, 6-3H-indole, 7-3H-indole, 6-benzo[b]furan, 7-benzo[b]furan, 6-benzothiophene, 7-benzothiophene, 6-1H-indazole, 7-1H-indazole, benzimidazole, benzthiazole, 1H-benzotriazole, 7-quinoline, 8-quinoline, 7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, 8-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, isoquinolin-7-yl,
- 5 isoquinolin-8-yl, 7-cinnoline, 8-cinnoline, phthalazine, 7-quinazoline, 8-quinazoline and quinoxaline, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
- 10 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
- 15 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
- 20 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
- 25 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
- 30 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R⁹ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano,

- 128 -

-OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
-NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m.

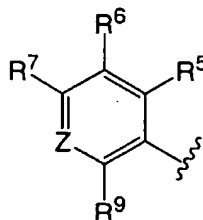
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R⁹ is H.

5 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, Z is CR⁸.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, Z is N.

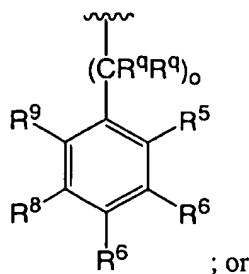
10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R⁷ is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R¹ is



15 R² is C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from
C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
-S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
20 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
-N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; or

R² is



; or

- 129 -

R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;

R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,

- 130 -

- OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 5 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

R⁷ is C₂₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I, Br;

- R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 10 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N.

- 15 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R² is C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents
 selected from C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 20 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 25 embodiments above and below, R² is -(C(R^q)₂)_ophenyl, wherein the phenyl is
 substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄
 haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 30 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,

- 131 -

- N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 5 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -C(=NR^m)NR^mRⁿ, -OR^m,
 10 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mRⁿ,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mRⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mRⁿ,
 -NR^mRⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mRⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mRⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mRⁿ,
 15 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mRⁿ, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 20 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 embodiments above and below, R² is -(C(R^q)₂)_oR^f, wherein R^f is a saturated or
 unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms
 25 independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring
 members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl
 ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano,
 nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -C(=NR^m)NR^mRⁿ, -OR^m,
 30 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mRⁿ, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mRⁿ,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mRⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mRⁿ,

- 132 -

- $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
5 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$
10 substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
15 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$;

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
 25 embodiments above and below, R^4 is a phenyl ring that is vicinally fused with a
 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
 30 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,

- 133 -

$-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
10 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the bridge carbon atoms are
substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups.

20 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^7 is tert-butyl or trifluoromethyl.

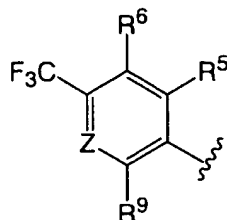
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^9 is H.

25 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, Z is CR^8 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, Z is N.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound
embodiments above and below, R^1 is

- 134 -



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, Cl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is not unsubstituted phenyl;

- 135 -

R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m;

5 Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N.

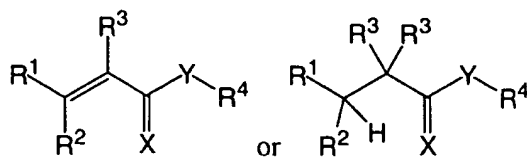
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m and $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m;

- 136 -

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Z is CR⁸.

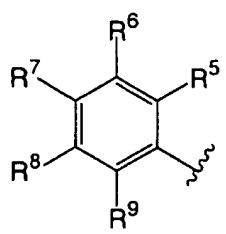
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the novel compound embodiments above and below, Z is N.

5 Another aspect of the invention relates to a method of treating acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory
 10 bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex,
 15 disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis, bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, comprising the step of administering a
 20 compound having the structure:



wherein:

R¹ is

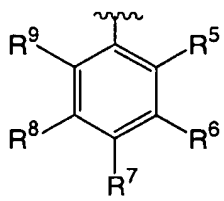


25 or a naphthyl or saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein

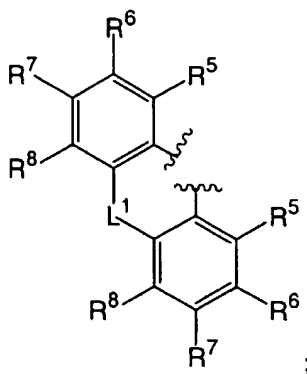
- 137 -

no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the naphthyl, heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;

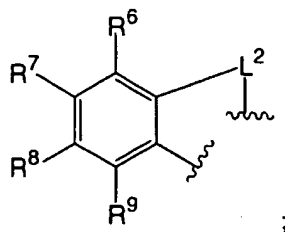
- 5 R^2 is H, hydroxy, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R^{10} ,



- or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;
- 10 or R^1 and R^2 together are

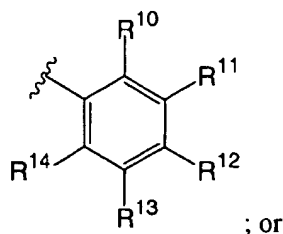


- 15 R^3 is H or C_{1-4} alkyl; or R^1 and R^3 together are



R^4 is

- 138 -



R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the heterocycle and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl $C(=O)OR^a$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^aC_{1-6}$ alkyl and $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; or R^4 is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising fused 6-membered rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder being carbon atoms, with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic, wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^a , NR^aR^a , C_{1-6} alkyl and C_{1-3} haloalkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O;

R^5 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a or $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a ; or R^5 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S;

R^6 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a , $-NR^aR^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^aR^a or $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^a ; or R^5 and R^6 together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the

- 139 -

carbon atoms of the bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, (=O), -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a and C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, and the available N atoms of the bridge are substituted by R^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a or C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a;

- 5 R⁷ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a;

- R⁸ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
 10 -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a; or R⁷ and R⁸ together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected
 15 from halo, C₁₋₆alkyl, (=O), -O-C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a and C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, and the available N atoms of the bridge are substituted by R^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a or C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a;

- R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
 20 -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a;

- R¹⁰ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
 -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 25 -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

- R¹¹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylR^c, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a,
 30 -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; or R¹⁰ and R¹¹ together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or

- 140 -

- 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, -OR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a,
5 -C(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or
10 -C₁₋₃alkylR^c; wherein if R¹⁰, R¹², R¹³ and R¹⁴ are all H, then R¹¹ is not -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a or -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a;
R¹² is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
15 -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl; or R¹¹ and R¹² together are a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not
20 greater than 2, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, -OR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C(=O)OR^a, -C(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, -C₁₋₆alkylOR^a,
25 -C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)OR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, -C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or -C₁₋₃alkylR^c;
R¹³ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
30 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,

- 141 -

-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R¹⁴ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,
C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
5 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
-NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

R^a is independently, at each instance, H, phenyl, benzyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

10 R^c is phenyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 groups selected from halo,
C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OR^a and -NR^aR^a; or R^c is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or
6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently
selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,
wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the carbon
15 atoms of the heterocycle are substituted by 0, 1 or 2 oxo groups, wherein the
heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected
from halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl, -OR^a and -NR^aR^a;

L¹ is a bond, -CH₂CH₂- or -CH=CH-;

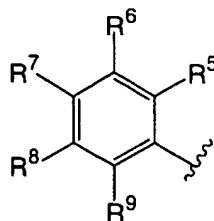
L² is NR^a, O, S(=O)_n, -N=CH-, -CH₂NR^a-, -CH=N- or -NR^aCH₂-;

20 X is O, S or NR^a; or X and R² together are =N-CH=CH-, =C-O-, =C-S-, or
=C-NR^a-;

Y is NH or O; and

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2; with the proviso that when
R¹ is 4-chlorophenyl, then R⁴ is not 3-methoxyphenyl.

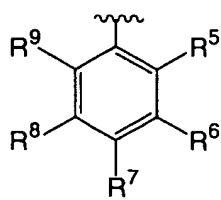
25 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R¹ is



- 142 -

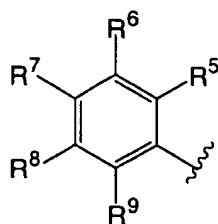
- or a naphthyl or saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the naphthyl, heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ;

R^2 is H, hydroxy, halo, C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 0, 1 or 2 substituents selected from R^{10} ,



- or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 ; and
- R^3 is H or C_{1-4} alkyl.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment embodiments above and below, R^1 is



- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment embodiments above and below, R^7 is independently, at each instance, C_{2-9} alkyl or C_{1-4} haloalkyl.

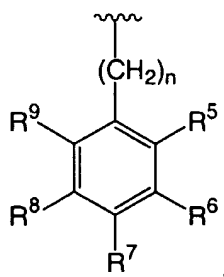
- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment embodiments above and below, R^1 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the

- 143 -

heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

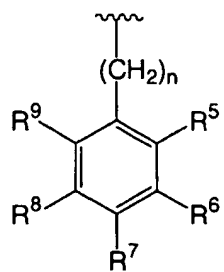
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
 5 embodiments above and below, R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from
 10 R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
 embodiments above and below, R^2 is



or a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or
 15 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

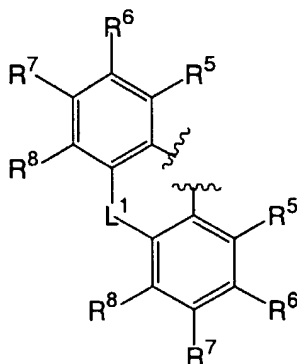
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
 20 embodiments above and below, R^2 is



- 144 -

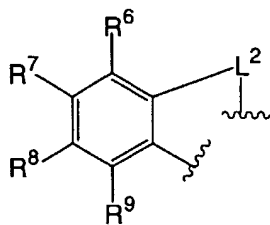
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered
ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N,
O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the
5 heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused
phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from
 R^5 , R^6 and R^7 .

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R^1 and R^2 together are



10

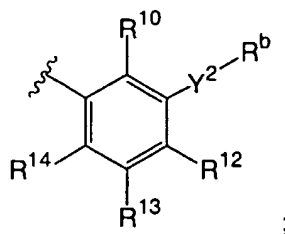
In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R^1 and R^3 together are



In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
15 embodiments above and below, X and R^2 together are $=N-CH=CH-$, $=C-O-$,
 $=C-S-$, or $=C-NR^3-$.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R^4 is

- 145 -

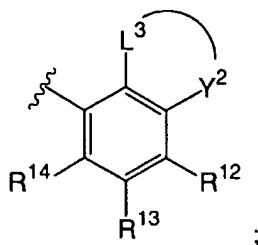


R^b is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyl-O- R^a ; and

Y^2 is $-NR^a$ - or $-O$ -.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment

5 embodiments above and below, R^4 is



L^3 is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3 carbon atoms and 0 or 1 atoms independently selected from O, N and S, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, $-OR^a$,

10 $-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$,
 $-C_{1-3}$ alkylC(=O)OR^a, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl,
 $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl or $-C_{1-3}$ alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
 and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a,
 $-C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylC(=O)OR^a, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a,
 15 $-C_{1-3}$ alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, $-C(=O)R^c$ or
 $-C_{1-3}$ alkylR^c;

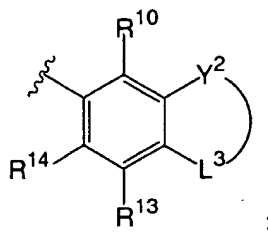
R^b is H, C_{1-6} alkyl, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, C_{1-6} alkyl-O- R^a ; and

Y^2 is $-NR^b$ - or $-O$ -.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment

20 embodiments above and below, R^4 is

- 146 -

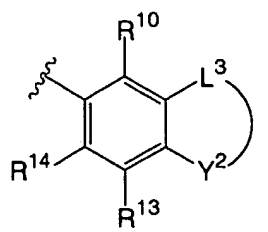


- L^3 is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3 carbon atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from O, N and S, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, $-OR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$ or $-C_{1-3}alkylNR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-3}alkylNR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)R^c$ or $-C_{1-3}alkylR^c$;

R^b is H, $C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-6}alkyl-O-R^a$; and

Y^2 is $-NR^b$ or $-O-$.

- In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R^4 is



- L^3 is a 2- or 3-atom, saturated or unsaturated, bridge containing 1, 2 or 3 carbon atoms and 0, 1 or 2 atoms independently selected from O, N and S, wherein the each of the carbon atoms in the bridge is substituted by H, =O, $-OR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-C(=O)OR^a$, $-C(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a$, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-NR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-3}alkylOC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$ or $-C_{1-3}alkylNR^aC(=O)C_{1-6}alkyl$, and any nitrogen atoms in the bridge are substituted by H, $-C_{1-6}alkylOR^a$, $-C_{1-6}alkyl$, $-C_{1-6}alkylNR^aR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)OR^a$, $-C_{1-3}alkylC(=O)NR^aR^a$,

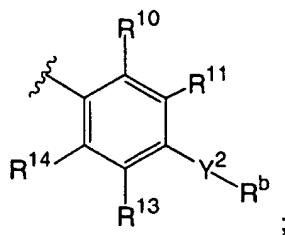
- 147 -

-C₁₋₃alkylOC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylNR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)R^c or
-C₁₋₃alkylR^c;

R^b is H, C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-O-R^a; and

Y² is -NR^b- or -O-.

- 5 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R⁴ is

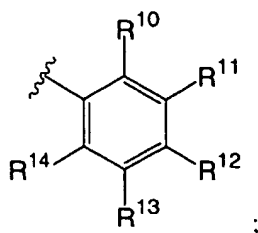


R^b is H, C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₆alkyl-O-R^a; and

Y² is -NR^a- or -O-.

- 10 In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R⁴ is 10-membered bicyclic ring comprising
fused 6-membered rings, containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or 4 N atoms with the remainder
being carbon atoms, with at least one of the 6-membered rings being aromatic,
wherein the carbon atoms are substituted by H, halo, OR^a, NR^aR^a, C₁₋₆alkyl and
15 C₁₋₃haloalkyl; and saturated carbon atoms may be additionally substituted by =O.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment
embodiments above and below, R⁴ is



R¹⁰ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, -C₁₋₃alkylOR^a,

- 20 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^a, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
-O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -O-C₁₋₆alkylC(=O)OR^a, -NR^aR^a,
-NR^a-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylNR^aR^a, -NR^a-C₁₋₆alkylOR^a, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl,
-C(=O)OC₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^aC₁₋₆alkyl or
-NR^aC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl;

- 148 -

R^{11} is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylOR^a, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylR^c, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylC(=O)OR^a, $-NR^a R^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a,
 5 $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^a C_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^a C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl;
 C_{1-6} alkylNR^aR^a;

R^{12} is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylOR^a, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl,
 10 $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylC(=O)OR^a, $-NR^a R^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^a C_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^a C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl;

R^{13} is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylOR^a,
 15 C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylC(=O)OR^a, $-NR^a R^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^a C_{1-6}$ alkyl or $-NR^a C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; and

R^{14} is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, $-C_{1-3}$ alkylOR^a, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^a$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl,
 20 $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylC(=O)OR^a, $-NR^a R^a$, $-NR^a-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^aR^a, $-NR^a-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^a, $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^a C_{1-6}$ alkyl or
 25 $-NR^a C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl; wherein one of R^{10} and R^{12} is not H.

In another embodiment, in conjunction with the method of treatment embodiments above, R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S, wherein the
 30 heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from halo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, $-OR^a$ and $-NR^a R^a$.

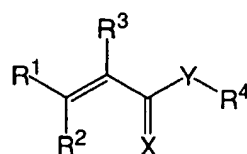
- 149 -

Another aspect of the invention relates to a method of treating acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory
5 bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation
10 syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis,
15 bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, comprising the step of administering a compound according to compound description embodiments above--each separately and alternatively.

Another aspect of the invention involves a method of treating acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine,
20 cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and
25 allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general
30 gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis,

- 150 -

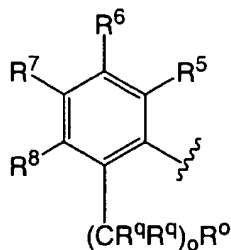
bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, comprising the step of administering a compound having the structure:



wherein:

- 5 X is O, S or NR^m;
 n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;
 o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;
 R^m is independently at each instance H or Rⁿ;
 Rⁿ is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, phenyl or benzyl;
- 10 R^q is independently in each instance H, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 15 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;
 R^s is Rⁿ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^q;
- 20 R³ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;
 R⁵ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c
 R⁶ is, independently at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 25 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;
 R⁸ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 30 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m; and

- 151 -

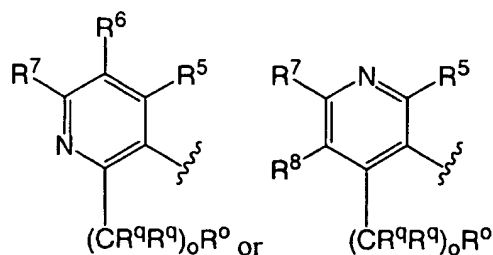
(A) R^1 is R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,

- 152 -

- $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
5 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
- 10 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
- R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
15 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p ;
- R^p is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
20 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
25 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and
- Y is O or NH; or
- (B) R^1 is

- 153 -



R² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or

3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a

5 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected

from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the

combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge

are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl,

C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,

10 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,

-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,

-S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,

-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,

15 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,

-C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,

-OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,

-SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,

20 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,

-N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s

and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,

cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,

-OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,

25 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,

-NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,

-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,

- 154 -

-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 5 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

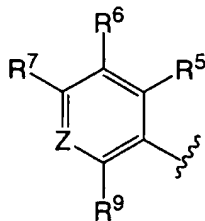
R⁷ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 10 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

R⁰ is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
 monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
 15 not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
 independently selected from R^p;

R^p is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano,
 nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 20 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 25 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

Y is O or NH; or

(C) R¹ is



- 155 -

R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^4 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but
 5 excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, oxo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^m$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m ,
 10 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^mC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^mC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s , $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 15 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 20 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 25 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s , $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 30 $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s and $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m ; wherein R^4 is not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,

- 156 -

benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;

R^7 is C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-5} haloalkyl, I or Br

R^9 is H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl,

- 5 $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, or $-(CH_2)_nR^c$;

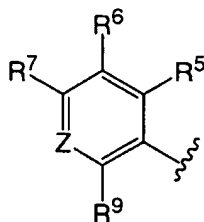
R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m,

- 10 $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N; or

(D) R^1 is



- 15 R^2 is C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m or $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m; or

- 20 R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_o$ phenyl, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,

- 157 -

- $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
5 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$
10 substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
15 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or
 R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_oR^f$, wherein R^f is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or
25 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently
selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,
wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle
or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently
selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$,
30 $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,

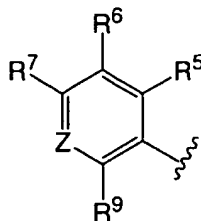
- 158 -

- $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
5 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
10 and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
15 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
25 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
30 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,

- 159 -

- $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
10 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
20 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, and the ring
25 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $C_{2-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I, Br;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
30 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
Y is NH; and
Z is CR^8 or N; or

- 160 -

(E) R^1 is R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, Cl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl; R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or

- 5 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
- 10 $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
- 15 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
- 20 $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
- 25 $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,

- 161 -

- OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 5 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is
 not unsubstituted phenyl;

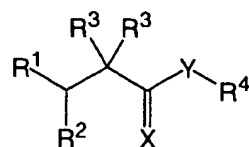
R⁷ is C₂₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br;

- R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 10 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N.

- Another aspect of the invention involves a method of treating acute,
 15 inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine,
 cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache,
 general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory
 bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder
 disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic
 20 inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and
 allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic
 neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation
 syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex,
 disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or
 25 vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general
 gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric
 lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis,
 bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, comprising the step of administering a
 compound having the structure:



30

- 162 -

wherein:

X is O, S or NR^m ;

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;

o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;

5 R^m is independently at each instance H or R^n ; R^n is independently at each instance C_{1-8} alkyl, phenyl or benzyl;

R^q is independently in each instance H, C_{1-4} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$ or $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$;

15 R^s is R^n substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^q ;

 R^3 is H or C_{1-4} alkyl;

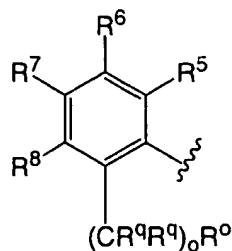
R^5 is H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , or $-(\text{CH}_2)_n\text{R}^c$

20 R^6 is, independently at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m or $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m ;

25 R^8 is H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m or $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m ; and

(A) R^1 is

- 163 -



R^2 is H, $-\text{OR}^m$, halo, $\text{C}_{1-3}\text{haloalkyl}$ or $\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-2}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,

- 164 -

-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 5 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

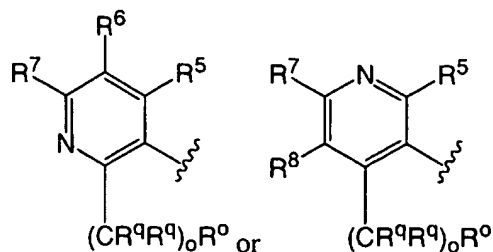
R⁷ is C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 10 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

R⁰ is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
 monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
 15 not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
 independently selected from R^p;

R^p is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano,
 nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 20 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 25 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

Y is O or NH; or

(B) R¹ is



- 165 -

R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,

- 166 -

$-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

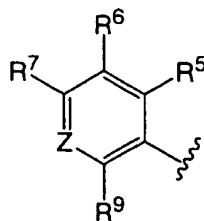
R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 5 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;

R^o is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
 monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
 10 not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
 2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
 independently selected from R^p ;

R^p is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 15 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 20 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and

Y is O or NH; or

(C) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, $C_{1-3}haloalkyl$ or $C_{1-6}alkyl$;

25 R^4 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or
 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from
 O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but
 excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-

- 167 -

- 2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
5 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
10 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
15 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
20 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
25 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl, benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;
30 R⁷ is C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br

- 168 -

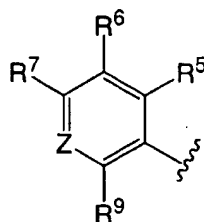
R^9 is H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , or $-(CH_2)_nR^c$;

R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m ;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR^8 or N; or

(D) R^1 is



R^2 is C_{1-6} alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m or $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m ; or

R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_o$ phenyl, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,

- 169 -

- $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
5 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$
substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
10 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
15 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
20 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or
 R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_oR^r$, wherein R^r is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or
6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently
selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,
wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle
25 or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently
selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
30 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,

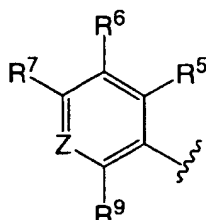
- 170 -

- $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
10 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
15 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
20 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
25 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$,
 $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
30 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,

- 171 -

- $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
10 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
15 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
20 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $C_{2-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I, Br;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
25 nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
Y is NH; and
Z is CR^8 or N; or
30 (E) R^1 is

- 172 -



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, Cl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,

- 173 -

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is

5 not unsubstituted phenyl;

R⁷ is C₂₋₆alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br;

R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 10 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N.

Another aspect of the invention involves a pharmaceutical composition
 comprising a compound according to any of the above embodiments and a
 15 pharmaceutically-acceptable diluent or carrier.

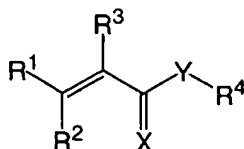
Another aspect of the invention involves the use of any of the above
 compound embodiments as a medicament.

Another aspect of the invention relates to the use of a compound according
 the any one of the above embodiments in the manufacture of a medicament for the
 20 treatment of acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general
 headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular
 syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases,
 osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders,
 inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with
 25 inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain
 and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated
 hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically
 maintained pain, deafferentation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or
 dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory,
 30 genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin
 reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration,

- 174 -

duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis, bronchial disorders or bladder disorders.

Another aspect of the invention relates to the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental pain, general headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-vascular syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, inflammatory eye disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis, bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, wherein the medicament contains a compound having the structure:



wherein:

X is O, S or NR^m;

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;

o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;

R^m is independently at each instance H or Rⁿ;

Rⁿ is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, phenyl or benzyl;

R^q is independently in each instance H, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,

- 175 -

-NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

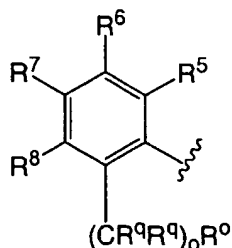
R⁵ is Rⁿ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected
 5 from R^q;

R³ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;

R⁵ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c

10 R⁶ is, independently at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

R⁸ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl,
 15 -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m; and
 (A) R¹ is



R² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

20 R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a
 saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected
 from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the
 combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
 25 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl,
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,

- 176 -

- $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$,
5 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$,
 $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
10 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
20 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
25 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
30 monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or

- 177 -

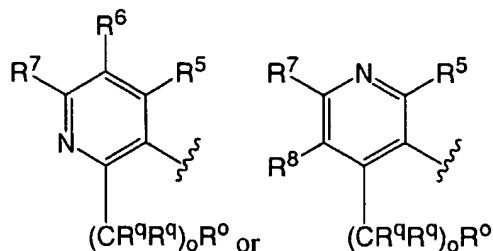
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^P ;

R^P is independently at each instance C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,

- 5 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
10 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and

Y is O or NH; or

(B) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

- 15 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
20 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
25 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$,

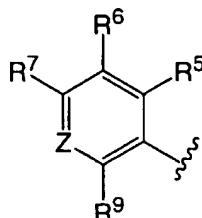
- 178 -

- $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$,
 $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
5 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$
 and $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{alkyl}$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $\text{C}_{1-2}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo,
 cyano, nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{SR}^m$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
10 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$,
15 $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$, $-\text{SR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^s$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{NR}^m\text{R}^s$,
 $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^s$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^s$ and $-\text{NR}^m\text{C}_{2-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$; and the ring
20 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
 R^7 is $\text{C}_{1-9}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-\text{OC}_{1-6}\text{alkyl}$,
 $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{O}-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$, $-\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$,
 $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$ or $-\text{NR}^m-\text{C}_{1-6}\text{alkylOR}^m$;
 R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
25 monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p ;
30 R^p is independently at each instance $\text{C}_{1-8}\text{alkyl}$, $\text{C}_{1-4}\text{haloalkyl}$, halo, cyano,
nitro, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OR}^n$, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{C}(=\text{NR}^m)\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OR}^m$,
 $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{NR}^m\text{R}^m$, $-\text{OC}(=\text{O})\text{N}(\text{R}^m)\text{S}(=\text{O})_2\text{R}^n$, $-\text{OC}_{2-6}\text{alkylNR}^m\text{R}^m$,

- 179 -

- OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 5 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

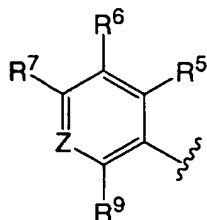
Y is O or NH; or

(C) R¹ isR² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

- 10 R⁴ is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by
 15 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₉alkyl, oxo, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OR^m, -S(=O)_nC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -OC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl, -C(=O)NR^mC₁₋₆alkyl, -NR^mC(=O)C₁₋₆alkyl -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 20 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 25 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,

- 180 -

- $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
5 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is
not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-
2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,
benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-
3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;
15 R^7 is $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I or Br
 R^9 is H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, or $-(CH_2)_nR^c$;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
20 nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
Y is NH; and
Z is CR^8 or N; or
25 (D) R^1 is



R^2 is $C_{1-6}alkyl$ substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from

- 181 -

- C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
5 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or
 R^2 is $-(C(R^q)_2)_0phenyl$, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3
substituents independently selected from $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
10 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
15 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $C_{1-4}alkyl$
substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano, nitro,
 $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
25 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
30 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,

- 182 -

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; or

- 5 R² is -(C(R^q)₂)_oR^t, wherein R^t is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or
 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently
 selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,
 wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle
 or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently
 10 selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 15 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 20 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
 and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
 25 -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 30 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,

- 183 -

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

- 5 R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge
- 10 are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
- 15 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
- 20 -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
- 25 cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
- 30 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,

- 184 -

- OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 5 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, and the ring
 and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

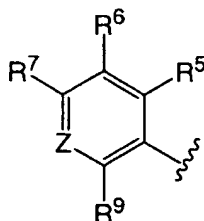
R⁷ is C₂₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I, Br;

- R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
 10 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N; or

(E) R¹ is



15

R² is H, -OR^m, Cl, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

- R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or
 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
 not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
 20 independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro,
 -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -ORⁿ, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 25 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
 -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,

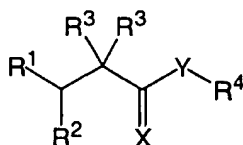
- 185 -

- $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
 5 and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
 cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$,
 $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$,
 $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 10 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is
 not unsubstituted phenyl;
 20 R^7 is $C_{2-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I or Br;
 R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
 nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
 25 Y is NH; and
 Z is CR^8 or N.

Another aspect of the invention relates to the manufacture of a
 medicament for the treatment of acute, inflammatory and neuropathic pain, dental
 pain, general headache, migraine, cluster headache, mixed-vascular and non-
 30 vascular syndromes, tension headache, general inflammation, arthritis, rheumatic
 diseases, osteoarthritis, inflammatory bowel disorders, inflammatory eye
 disorders, inflammatory or unstable bladder disorders, psoriasis, skin complaints

- 186 -

with inflammatory components, chronic inflammatory conditions, inflammatory pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, neuropathic pain and associated hyperalgesia and allodynia, diabetic neuropathy pain, causalgia, sympathetically maintained pain, deafferentation syndromes, asthma, epithelial tissue damage or dysfunction, herpes simplex, disturbances of visceral motility at respiratory, genitourinary, gastrointestinal or vascular regions, wounds, burns, allergic skin reactions, pruritis, vitiligo, general gastrointestinal disorders, gastric ulceration, duodenal ulcers, diarrhea, gastric lesions induced by necrotising agents, hair growth, vasomotor or allergic rhinitis, bronchial disorders or bladder disorders, wherein the medicament contains a compound having the structure:



wherein:

X is O, S or NR^m;

n is independently, at each instance, 0, 1 or 2;

o is independently, at each instance, 0, 1, 2 or 3;

R^m is independently at each instance H or Rⁿ;

Rⁿ is independently at each instance C₁₋₈alkyl, phenyl or benzyl;

R^q is independently in each instance H, C₁₋₄alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,

-OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,

-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;

R^s is Rⁿ substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from R^q;

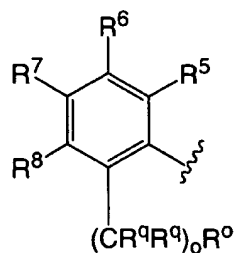
R³ is H or C₁₋₄alkyl;

- 187 -

R^5 is H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, or $-(CH_2)_nR^c$

R^6 is, independently at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m;

R^8 is H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR^m; and
(A) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^m, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^m, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylNR^mR^s, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR^s,

- 188 -

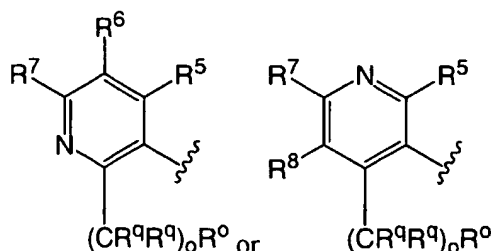
- $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$
5 and $C_{1-4}alkyl$ substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from $C_{1-2}haloalkyl$, halo,
cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
10 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
15 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
20 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
 R^9 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
25 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^p ;
 R^p is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
30 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,

- 189 -

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; and

5 Y is O or NH; or

(B) R¹ is



R² is H, -OR^m, halo, C₁₋₃haloalkyl or C₁₋₆alkyl;

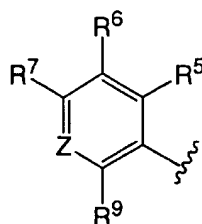
R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or

- 10 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 15 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 20 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
 25 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,

- 190 -

- cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
5 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
10 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;
- 15 R^7 is $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$,
 $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;
- R^0 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 5-, 6- or 7-membered
monocyclic or 7-, 8-, 9-, 10- or 11-membered bicyclic ring containing 0, 1, 2, 3 or
20 4 atoms selected from N, O and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is
not greater than 2, wherein the carbon atoms of the ring are substituted by 0, 1 or
2 oxo groups, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents
independently selected from R^P ;
- R^P is independently at each instance $C_{1-8}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo, cyano,
25 nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$,
 $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
30 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; and
- Y is O or NH; or

- 191 -

(C) R^1 is R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, halo, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl; R^4 is a saturated, partially-saturated or unsaturated 8-, 9-, 10 or

- 5 11-membered bicyclic heterocycle containing 1, 2, 3, 4 or 5 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, but excluding quinolin-6-yl, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydro-benzo[b]thiophen-2-yl, benzothiazol-2-yl, 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-6-yl, wherein the heterocycle is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-9} alkyl, oxo, C_{1-4} haloalkyl,
- 10 halo, nitro, cyano, $-OR^m$, $-S(=O)_n C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-C(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-OC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-C(=O)NR^mC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-NR^mC(=O)C_{1-6}$ alkyl $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s ,
- 15 $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s , $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2
- 20 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^m , $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$,
- 25 $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl OR^s , $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,

- 192 -

-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
 -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; wherein R⁴ is
 5 not 2-aminocarbonylmethyl-2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, 2-cyanomethyl-
 2,3-dihydro-benzo[1,4]dioxin-8-yl, quinolin-3-yl, 3H-quinazolin-4-on-3-yl,
 benzo[1,3]dioxol-5-yl, 3,3-dimethyl-1,3-dihydro-indol-2-on-6-yl or 4,4-dimethyl-
 3,4-dihydro-1H-quinolin-2-on-7-yl;

R⁷ is C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I or Br

10 R⁹ is H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl,
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, or -(CH₂)_nR^c;

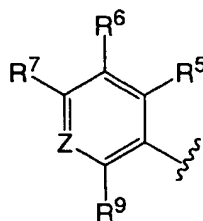
R⁹ is independently, at each instance, H, C₁₋₉alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo,
 nitro, cyano, -OC₁₋₆alkyl, -O-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -O-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,

15 -O-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m, -NR^mR^m, -NR^m-C₁₋₄haloalkyl, -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or
 -NR^m-C₁₋₆alkylOR^m;

Y is NH; and

Z is CR⁸ or N; or

(D) R¹ is



20

R² is C₁₋₆alkyl substituted by 1, 2 or 3 substituents selected from
 C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
 25 -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
 -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m or -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m; or

- 193 -

- R^2 is $-(C(R^9)_2)_o$ phenyl, wherein the phenyl is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
5 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$,
10 $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$,
15 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)OR^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$, $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
20 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
25 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; or
30 R^2 is $-(C(R^9)_2)_oR^f$, wherein R^f is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring heterocycle containing 1, 2 or 3 heteroatoms independently selected from N, O and S, wherein no more than 2 of the ring members are O or S,

- 194 -

- wherein the heterocycle is optionally fused with a phenyl ring, and the heterocycle or fused phenyl ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
 5 -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
 10 -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
 15 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
 20 -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
 25 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m;
- 30 R⁴ is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S that is optionally vicinally fused with a saturated or unsaturated 3- or 4-atom bridge containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected

- 195 -

- from O, N and S with the remaining atoms being carbon, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 2, wherein the ring and bridge are substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C₁₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₄haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m,
5 -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m, -OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m,
-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ,
-S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ,
-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ,
10 -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -C(=O)R^s,
-C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s,
-OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s,
-SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s,
15 -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
-N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s
and C₁₋₄alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C₁₋₂haloalkyl, halo,
cyano, nitro, -C(=O)Rⁿ, -C(=O)ORⁿ, -C(=O)NR^mR^m, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -OR^m,
-OC(=O)Rⁿ, -OC(=O)NR^mR^m, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m,
20 -OC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, -SR^m, -S(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)C(=O)Rⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)ORⁿ, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m,
-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂Rⁿ, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^m,
-NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^m, -C(=O)R^s, -C(=O)OR^s, -C(=O)NR^mR^s, -C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s,
25 -OR^s, -OC(=O)R^s, -OC(=O)NR^mR^s, -OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -OC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s,
-OC₂₋₆alkylOR^s, -SR^s, -S(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂R^s, -S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
-S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -S(=O)₂N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
-NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)R^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s, -N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s,
-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂R^s, -N(R^m)S(=O)₂NR^mR^s,
30 -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylNR^mR^s, -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^s and -NR^mC₂₋₆alkylOR^m, and the ring
and bridge carbon atoms are substituted with 0, 1 or 2 =O groups;

R⁷ is C₂₋₈alkyl, C₁₋₅haloalkyl, I, Br;

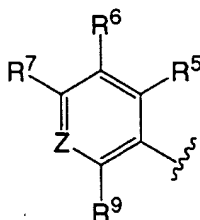
- 196 -

R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, C_{1-9} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}$ alkyl, $-O-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-O-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR m , $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}$ haloalkyl, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m or $-NR^m-C_{1-6}$ alkylOR m ;

5 Y is NH; and

Z is CR^8 or N; or

(E) R^1 is



R^2 is H, $-OR^m$, Cl, C_{1-3} haloalkyl or C_{1-6} alkyl;

10 R^4 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- or 6-membered ring containing 0, 1, 2 or 3 atoms selected from O, N and S, so long as the combination of O and S atoms is not greater than 1, wherein the ring is substituted by 0, 1, 2 or 3 substituents independently selected from C_{1-8} alkyl, C_{1-4} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^n$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 15 $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR m , $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR m , $-C(=O)R^s$,
 20 $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR s , $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 25 $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^s , $-NR^mC_{2-6}$ alkylOR s and C_{1-4} alkyl substituted by 1 or 2 groups selected from C_{1-2} haloalkyl, halo, cyano, nitro, $-C(=O)R^n$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-OR^m$, $-OC(=O)R^n$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-OC_{2-6}$ alkyl NR^mR^m , $-OC_{2-6}$ alkylOR m ,

- 197 -

- $-SR^m$, $-S(=O)R^n$, $-S(=O)_2R^n$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^n$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^m$,
 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^m$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^n$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^m$,
5 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^m$, $-C(=O)R^s$, $-C(=O)OR^s$, $-C(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$,
 $-OR^s$, $-OC(=O)R^s$, $-OC(=O)NR^mR^s$, $-OC(=O)N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-OC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$,
 $-OC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$, $-SR^s$, $-S(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2R^s$, $-S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-S(=O)_2N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)R^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)OR^s$, $-N(R^m)C(=O)NR^mR^s$,
10 $-N(R^m)C(=NR^m)NR^mR^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2R^s$, $-N(R^m)S(=O)_2NR^mR^s$,
 $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylNR^mR^s$, $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^s$ and $-NR^mC_{2-6}alkylOR^m$; wherein R^4 is
not unsubstituted phenyl;

R^7 is $C_{2-6}alkyl$, $C_{1-5}haloalkyl$, I or Br;

- R^9 is independently, at each instance, H, $C_{1-9}alkyl$, $C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, halo,
15 nitro, cyano, $-OC_{1-6}alkyl$, $-O-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-O-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$,
 $-O-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$, $-NR^mR^m$, $-NR^m-C_{1-4}haloalkyl$, $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylNR^mR^m$ or
 $-NR^m-C_{1-6}alkylOR^m$;

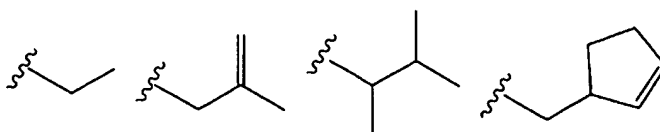
Y is NH; and

Z is CR^8 or N.

- 20 The compounds of this invention may have in general several asymmetric
centers and are typically depicted in the form of racemic mixtures. This invention
is intended to encompass racemic mixtures, partially racemic mixtures and
separate enantiomers and diastereomers.

- 25 Unless otherwise specified, the following definitions apply to terms found
in the specification and claims:

“ $C_{\alpha-\beta}alkyl$ ” means an alkyl group comprising from α to β carbon atoms in a
branched, cyclical or linear relationship or any combination of the three. The
alkyl groups described in this section may also contain a double or triple bond.
Examples of $C_{1-6}alkyl$ include, but are not limited to the following:

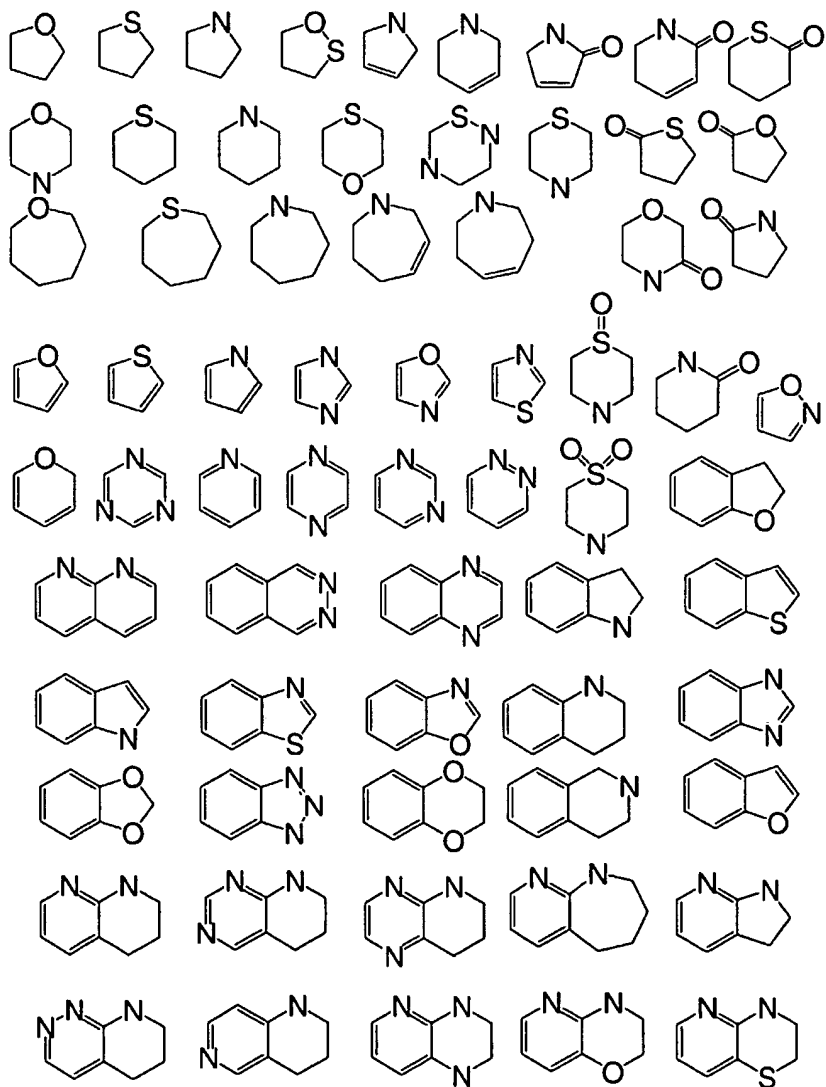


- 198 -

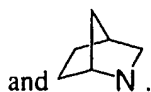
“Halo” means a halogen atoms selected from F, Cl, Br and I.

“C_{α-β}haloalkyl” means an alkyl group, as described above, wherein any number--at least one--of the hydrogen atoms attached to the alkyl chain are replaced by F, Cl, Br or I.

- 5 “Heterocycle” means a ring comprising at least one carbon atom and at least one other atom selected from N, O and S. Examples of heterocycles that may be found in the claims include, but are not limited to, the following:



10



- 199 -

"Pharmaceutically-acceptable salt" means a salt prepared by conventional means, and are well known by those skilled in the art. The "pharmacologically acceptable salts" include basic salts of inorganic and organic acids, including but not limited to hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid, methanesulphonic acid, ethanesulfonic acid, malic acid, acetic acid, oxalic acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, lactic acid, fumaric acid, succinic acid, maleic acid, salicylic acid, benzoic acid, phenylacetic acid, mandelic acid and the like. When compounds of the invention include an acidic function such as a carboxy group, then suitable pharmaceutically acceptable cation pairs for the carboxy group are well known to those skilled in the art and include alkaline, alkaline earth, ammonium, quaternary ammonium cations and the like. For additional examples of "pharmacologically acceptable salts," *see infra* and Berge et al., J. Pharm. Sci. 66:1 (1977).

"Leaving group" generally refers to groups readily displaceable by a nucleophile, such as an amine, a thiol or an alcohol nucleophile. Such leaving groups are well known in the art. Examples of such leaving groups include, but are not limited to, N-hydroxysuccinimide, N-hydroxybenzotriazole, halides, triflates, tosylates and the like. Preferred leaving groups are indicated herein where appropriate.

"Protecting group" generally refers to groups well known in the art which are used to prevent selected reactive groups, such as carboxy, amino, hydroxy, mercapto and the like, from undergoing undesired reactions, such as nucleophilic, electrophilic, oxidation, reduction and the like. Preferred protecting groups are indicated herein where appropriate. Examples of amino protecting groups include, but are not limited to, aralkyl, substituted aralkyl, cycloalkenylalkyl and substituted cycloalkenyl alkyl, allyl, substituted allyl, acyl, alkoxycarbonyl, aralkoxycarbonyl, silyl and the like. Examples of aralkyl include, but are not limited to, benzyl, ortho-methylbenzyl, trityl and benzhydryl, which can be optionally substituted with halogen, alkyl, alkoxy, hydroxy, nitro, acylamino, acyl and the like, and salts, such as phosphonium and ammonium salts. Examples of aryl groups include phenyl, naphthyl, indanyl, anthracenyl, 9-(9-phenylfluorenyl), phenanthrenyl, durenyl and the like. Examples of cycloalkenylalkyl or substituted cycloalkenylalkyl radicals, preferably have 6-10 carbon atoms, include, but are not limited to, cyclohexenyl

- 200 -

methy1 and the like. Suitable acyl, alkoxycarbonyl and aralkoxycarbonyl groups include benzyloxycarbonyl, t-butoxycarbonyl, iso-butoxycarbonyl, benzoyl, substituted benzoyl, butyryl, acetyl, tri-fluoroacetyl, tri-chloro acetyl, phthaloyl and the like. A mixture of protecting groups can be used to protect the same amino
5 group, such as a primary amino group can be protected by both an aralkyl group and an aralkoxycarbonyl group. Amino protecting groups can also form a heterocyclic ring with the nitrogen to which they are attached, for example, 1,2-bis(methylene)benzene, phthalimidyl, succinimidyl, maleimidyl and the like and where these heterocyclic groups can further include adjoining aryl and
10 cycloalkyl rings. In addition, the heterocyclic groups can be mono-, di- or tri-substituted, such as nitrophthalimidyl. Amino groups may also be protected against undesired reactions, such as oxidation, through the formation of an addition salt, such as hydrochloride, toluenesulfonic acid, trifluoroacetic acid and the like. Many of the amino protecting groups are also suitable for protecting carboxy, hydroxy and
15 mercapto groups. For example, aralkyl groups. Alkyl groups are also suitable groups for protecting hydroxy and mercapto groups, such as *tert*-butyl.

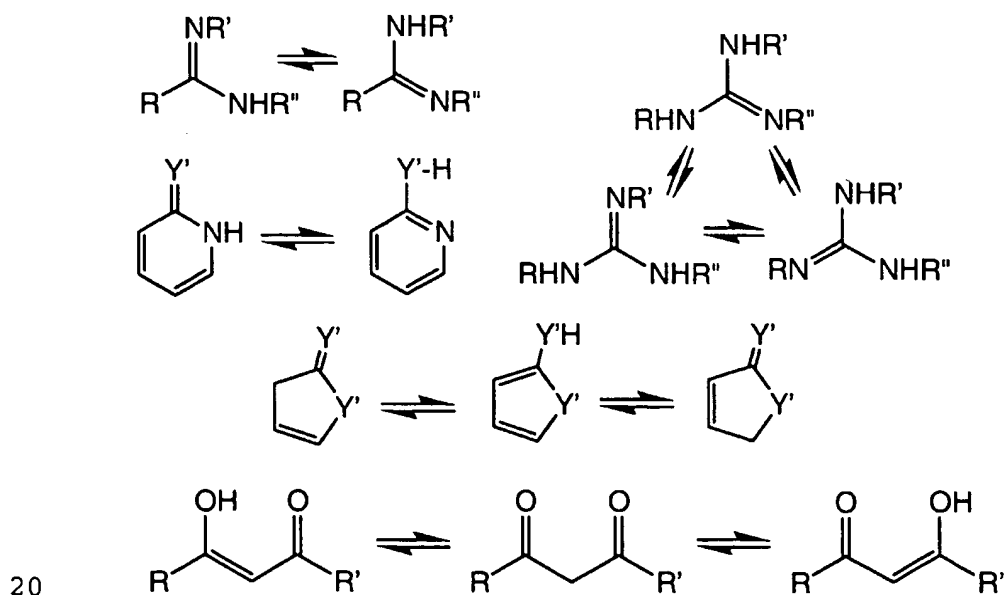
Silyl protecting groups are silicon atoms optionally substituted by one or more alkyl, aryl and aralkyl groups. Suitable silyl protecting groups include, but are not limited to, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, tri-isopropylsilyl, *tert*-
20 butyldimethylsilyl, dimethylphenylsilyl, 1,2-bis(dimethylsilyl)benzene, 1,2-bis(dimethylsilyl)ethane and diphenylmethylsilyl. Silylation of an amino groups provide mono- or di-silylamino groups. Silylation of aminoalcohol compounds can lead to a N,N,O-tri-silyl derivative. Removal of the silyl function from a silyl ether function is readily accomplished by treatment with, for
25 example, a metal hydroxide or ammonium fluoride reagent, either as a discrete reaction step or in situ during a reaction with the alcohol group. Suitable silylating agents are, for example, trimethylsilyl chloride, *tert*-butyl-dimethylsilyl chloride, phenyldimethylsilyl chloride, diphenylmethyl silyl chloride or their combination products with imidazole or DMF. Methods for silylation of amines
30 and removal of silyl protecting groups are well known to those skilled in the art. Methods of preparation of these amine derivatives from corresponding amino acids, amino acid amides or amino acid esters are also well known to those skilled

- 201 -

in the art of organic chemistry including amino acid/amino acid ester or aminoalcohol chemistry.

Protecting groups are removed under conditions which will not affect the remaining portion of the molecule. These methods are well known in the art and
 5 include acid hydrolysis, hydrogenolysis and the like. A preferred method involves removal of a protecting group, such as removal of a benzyloxycarbonyl group by hydrogenolysis utilizing palladium on carbon in a suitable solvent system such as an alcohol, acetic acid, and the like or mixtures thereof. A t-butoxycarbonyl protecting group can be removed utilizing an inorganic or organic
 10 acid, such as HCl or trifluoroacetic acid, in a suitable solvent system, such as dioxane or methylene chloride. The resulting amino salt can readily be neutralized to yield the free amine. Carboxy protecting group, such as methyl, ethyl, benzyl, *tert*-butyl, 4-methoxyphenylmethyl and the like, can be removed under hydrolysis and hydrogenolysis conditions well known to those skilled in the
 15 art.

It should be noted that compounds of the invention may contain groups that may exist in tautomeric forms, such as cyclic and acyclic amidine and guanidine groups, heteroatom substituted heteroaryl groups ($Y' = O, S, NR$), and the like, which are illustrated in the following examples:



- 202 -

and though one form is named, described, displayed and/or claimed herein, all the tautomeric forms are intended to be inherently included in such name, description, display and/or claim.

Prodrugs of the compounds of this invention are also contemplated by this invention. A prodrug is an active or inactive compound that is modified chemically through in vivo physiological action, such as hydrolysis, metabolism and the like, into a compound of this invention following administration of the prodrug to a patient. The suitability and techniques involved in making and using prodrugs are well known by those skilled in the art. For a general discussion of prodrugs involving esters see Svensson and Tunek Drug Metabolism Reviews 165 (1988) and Bundgaard Design of Prodrugs, Elsevier (1985). Examples of a masked carboxylate anion include a variety of esters, such as alkyl (for example, methyl, ethyl), cycloalkyl (for example, cyclohexyl), aralkyl (for example, benzyl, p-methoxybenzyl), and alkylcarbonyloxyalkyl (for example, pivaloyloxymethyl). Amines have been masked as arylcarbonyloxymethyl substituted derivatives which are cleaved by esterases in vivo releasing the free drug and formaldehyde (Bundgaard J. Med. Chem. 2503 (1989)). Also, drugs containing an acidic NH group, such as imidazole, imide, indole and the like, have been masked with N-acyloxymethyl groups (Bundgaard Design of Prodrugs, Elsevier (1985)). Hydroxy groups have been masked as esters and ethers. EP 039,051 (Sloan and Little, 4/11/81) discloses Mannich-base hydroxamic acid prodrugs, their preparation and use.

- 203 -

Experimental

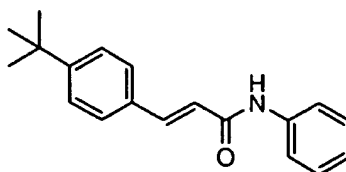
General

Unless otherwise noted, all materials were obtained from commercial suppliers and used without further purification. All parts are by weight and
5 temperatures are in Degrees centigrade unless otherwise indicated. All compounds showed NMR spectra consistent with their assigned structures. Melting points were determined on a Buchi apparatus and are uncorrected. Mass spectral data was determined by electrospray ionization technique. All examples were purified to >95% purity as determined by high-performance liquid
10 chromatography (HPLC). Unless otherwise stated, reactions were run at room temperature.

The following abbreviations are used:

aq. -	aqueous
cond -	concentrated
15 DMF -	<i>N,N</i> -dimethylformamide
Et ₂ O -	diethyl ether
EtOAc -	ethyl acetate
EtOH -	ethyl alcohol
h -	hour
20 min -	minutes
MeOH -	methyl alcohol
satd -	saturated
THF -	tetrahydrofuran

Example 1



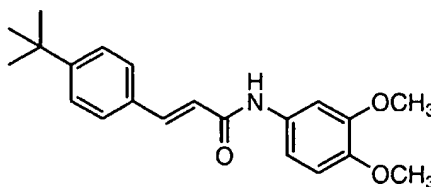
25

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-phenylprop-2-enamide. To a 10 mL glass vial was added 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 0.98 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) followed by CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL), 1-[3-(dimethylamino)propyl]-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (225 mg, 1.17 mmol, Bachem) and aniline (98 μ L, 100 mg,

- 204 -

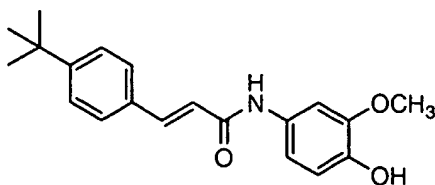
1.08 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 24 h. EtOAc was added (60 mL) and the mixture washed successively with 1 N NaOH (2 x 20 mL), 1 N HCl (20 mL), water (20 mL) and satd NaCl (20 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. Recrystallization from hexane and CH₂Cl₂ provided the title product as white crystals. MP 141 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 280 (M+1).

Example 2

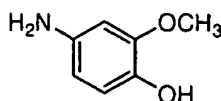


(2E)-N-(3,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. To a 20 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with reflux condenser and drying tube was added 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 0.98 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) followed by CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL), oxalyl chloride (90 uL, 130 mg, 1.03 mmol, Aldrich) and DMF (1 uL). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred and heated at reflux for 30 min. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the residue dissolved in acetone (2 mL). The solution was added to a mixture of 3,4-dimethoxyaniline (180 mg, 1.17 mmol, Aldrich), potassium carbonate (200 mg), water (2 mL) and acetone (2 mL), magnetically stirred at 25 °C in a 10 mL glass vial. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 16 h then diluted with EtOAc (60 mL) and washed successively with 1 N HCl (20 mL), 1 N NaOH (20 mL), water (20 mL) and satd NaCl (20 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated. Recrystallization from hexane and CH₂Cl₂ provided the title product as a yellow solid. MP 115-116 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 340 (M+1).

- 205 -

Example 3

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)prop-2-enamide.



5

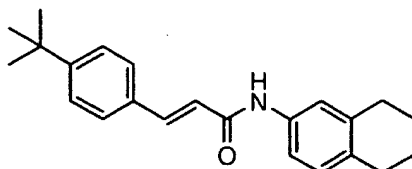
(a). 4-Amino-2-methoxyphenol. To a round-bottomed flask was added 4-nitroguaiacol (500 mg, 3.0 mmol, Aldrich) and anhydrous EtOH (50 mL). The solution was stirred magnetically under N₂ and treated with 10% Pd on carbon (200 mg, Aldrich). The suspension was purged with H₂ and then stirred at 25 °C under 1 atm H₂ for 16 h. The suspension was purged with N₂, filtered through Celite and concentrated in vacuo to provide a dark solid. The solid was washed with 1:1 CH₂Cl₂:hexane and dried in vacuo to provide the title product as pale brown crystals. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 140 (M+1).

10

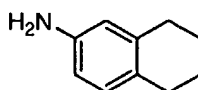
(b). (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-hydroxy-3-methoxyphenyl)prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 2**, 4-amino-2-methoxyphenol, **Example 3(a)**, (164 mg, 1.18 mmol) and 4-*t*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 0.98 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after recrystallization of the crude product from CH₂Cl₂ and hexane, the title product as brown crystals. MP 203-204 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 326 (M+1).

15

- 206 -

Example 4

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthyl)prop-2-enamide.



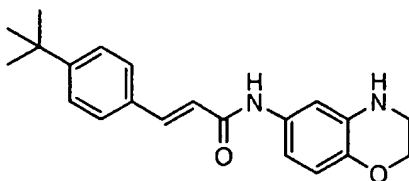
5

(a). **2-5,6,7,8-Tetrahydronaphthylamine.** To a round-bottomed flask was added 6-amino-1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthalene (500 mg, 3.10 mmol, Maybridge), triethylsilane (2.50 mL, 15.5 mmol, Aldrich) and trifluoroacetic acid (5.0 mL, 66 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred vigorously, at 10 25 °C, for 2 h. The solvents were removed in vacuo and the residue dissolved in EtOAc (50 mL) and extracted with 1 N HCl (100 mL, then 50 mL). The combined aqueous acidic extract was washed with EtOAc (50 mL) then basified with 5 N NaOH, at 0 °C, to pH 10. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 50 mL), the combined organic extract washed with water (50 mL), satd NaCl 15 (50 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a brown oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 148 (M+1).

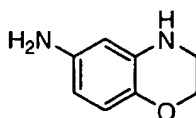
(b). **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthyl)prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 2**, 2-5,6,7,8-tetrahydronaphthylamine, **Example 4(a)**, (173 mg, 1.18 mmol) and 4-*t*-butyl-20 *trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 0.98 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (4:1 hexane:EtOAc) followed by recrystallization from CH₂Cl₂ and hexane, the title product as white crystals. MP 198-199 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 334 (M+1).

- 207 -

Example 5

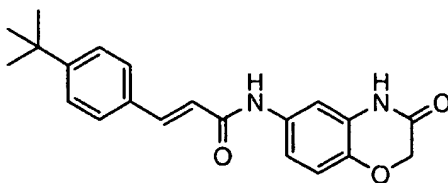


(2E)-N-(2H,3H,4H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

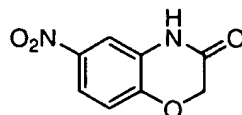


- 5
- (a) **2H,3H,4H-Benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-6-ylamine.** To a round-bottomed flask was added 2-amino-4-nitrophenol (1.0 g, 6.5 mmol, Aldrich), potassium carbonate (1.8 g, 13 mmol), DMF (5 mL) and 1,2-dibromoethane (0.59 mL, 6.9 mmol, Aldrich). The mixture was magnetically stirred and heated
- 10 in a 125 °C oil bath, under N₂, for 2.5 h. After allowing to cool to 25 °C, the reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with 1 N NaOH (3 x 50 mL), water (50 mL), satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated to provide a dark residue [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 181 (M+1)]. The crude product was dissolved in EtOH (100 mL), the solution was purged with N₂,
- 15 treated with 10% Pd on carbon (450 mg, Aldrich), purged with H₂ then magnetically stirred under 1 atm H₂ for 2 h. After purging again with N₂, the suspension was filtered through Celite and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (95:5 CH₂Cl₂: 2 M NH₃ in EtOH) provided the title product as a viscous brown oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 151 (M+1).
- 20 (b) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H,4H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 2**, 2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-6-ylamine, **Example 5(a)**, (176 mg, 1.18 mmol) and 4-*t*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 0.98 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (step
- 25 gradient, 6:3:1 CH₂Cl₂:hexane:EtOAc then 9:1 hexane:EtOAc) the title product as a yellow solid. MP 108-114 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 337 (M+1).

- 208 -

Example 6

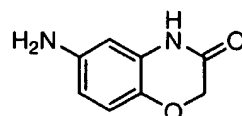
(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-oxo(2H,4H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-6-yl))prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) 6-Nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one. A mixture of 4-nitro-2-aminophenol (4.6 g, 30 mmol, Aldrich), benzyltrimethylammonium chloride (6.8 g, 30 mmol, Aldrich) and solid NaHCO_3 (12.6 g, 150 mmol) in chloroform (100 mL) was magnetically stirred at 0 °C in a round-bottomed flask and treated dropwise with chloroacetyl chloride (2.9 mL, 33 mmol, Aldrich) over a period of 30 min. After the addition was complete, the reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h, then at 50 °C overnight. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue treated with water (50 mL), collected by filtration and washed with water. The solid was recrystallized from EtOH to provide 6-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one. MS (ESI, neg. ion) m/z : 193 (M-1).

15



(b) 6-Amino-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one. To a suspension of 6-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 6(a)**, (0.50 g, 2.6 mmol) and CuCl (0.77 g, 7.8 mmol, Aldrich) in anhydrous MeOH (25 mL), magnetically stirred at 25 °C in a round-bottomed flask, was added potassium borohydride (0.98 g, 18 mmol, Aldrich) in portions. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 0.5 h, then the solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue suspended in water (30 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (5 x 20 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over Na_2SO_4 ,

20

- 209 -

filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a brown solid.

MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 165 (M+1).

(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-oxo(2H,4H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-**

oxazaperhydroin-6-yl))prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to

5 prepare **Example 1**, 6-amino-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one,

Example 6(b), (207 mg, 1.26 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid

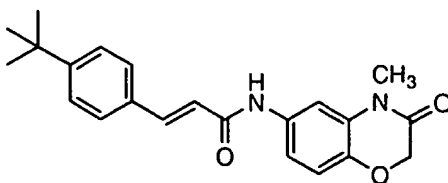
(258 mg, 1.26 mmol EMKA-Chemie) provided, after recrystallization from

EtOAc and hexane, the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP > 280 °C. MS

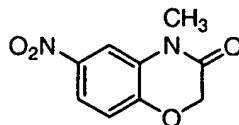
(ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 351 (M+1).

10

Example 7

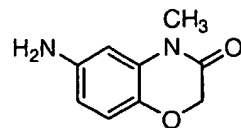


(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-methyl-3-oxo(2H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-
oxazaperhydroin-6-yl))prop-2-enamide.

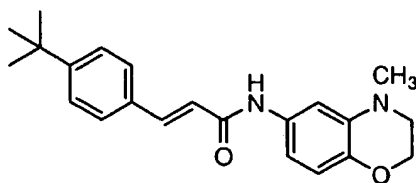


- 15 (a) **4-Methyl-6-nitro-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one.** A mixture of 6-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 6(a)**, (970 mg, 25 mmol), benzyltrimethylammonium chloride (114 mg, 0.50 mmol, Aldrich) and iodomethane (0.47 mL, 7.5 mmol, Aldrich) in CH₂Cl₂ (20 mL) was stirred magnetically in a 100 mL round-bottomed flask and treated with CsOH
- 20 monohydrate (4.2 g, 25 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 1 h, treated with water (5 mL) and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with water (5 mL), satd NaCl (5 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (9:1 hexane:EtOAc) to provide the title product.
- 25 MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 209 (M+1).

- 210 -



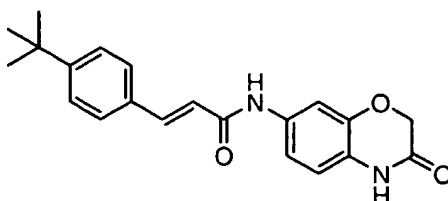
- (b) **6-Amino-4-methyl-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one.** To a solution of 4-methyl-6-nitro-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 7(a)**, (700 mg, 3.4 mmol) and $\text{NiCl}_2 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (400 mg, 1.7 mmol, Aldrich) in MeOH (10 mL), magnetically stirred in a 100 mL round-bottomed flask at 25 °C, was added NaBH_4 (190 mg, 5.1 mmol, Aldrich) in portions. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 min then concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography ($\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2/\text{EtOAc}$) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 179 ($\text{M}+1$).
- (c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-methyl-3-oxo(2H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-6-yl))prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and 6-amino-4-methyl-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 7(b)**, (180 mg, 1.0 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (4:1 $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2:\text{EtOAc}$), the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 201–203 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 365 ($\text{M}+1$).

Example 8

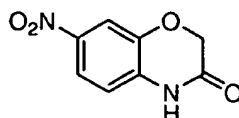
- (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-methyl(2H,3H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-6-yl))prop-2-enamide.
- To a solution of lithium aluminum hydride (2.0 mL, 2.0 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich), magnetically stirred at 0 °C in a round-bottomed flask under N_2 , was added 6-amino-4-methyl-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 7b**, (180 mg, 1.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at that temperature for 1 h. The reaction was quenched by the dropwise addition of 20% $\text{H}_2\text{O}/\text{THF}$ (1.2 mL), followed by 5 N NaOH (0.2 mL). The mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 30 min, then filtered and washed with EtOAc.

- 211 -

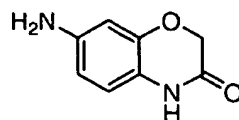
The filtrate was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 165 (M+1)]. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, the crude product and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid provided the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 186–188 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 351 (M+1).

Example 9

(2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-oxo(2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-7-yl))prop-2-enamide.



(a) **7-Nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one**. Analogous to the procedure used for the preparation of 6-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 6(a)**, 5-nitro-2-aminophenol (4.6 g, 30 mmol, Aldrich) and chloroacetyl chloride (2.9 mL, 33 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after recrystallization from EtOH, 7-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one.



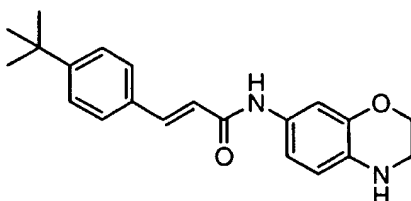
MS (ESI, neg. ion) *m/z*: 193 (M–1).

(b) **7-Amino-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one**. A mixture of 7-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 9(a)**, (970 mg, 5.0 mmol) and 10% Pd on carbon (100 mg, Aldrich) in MeOH (20 mL) was magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask under 1 atm H₂ for 2 h. The mixture was purged with N₂ and filtered through a pad of Celite. Concentration in vacuo provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 165 (M+1).

(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-oxo(2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-7-yl))prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to

- 212 -

prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and 7-amino-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 9(b)**, (164 mg, 1.0 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (4:1 CH₂Cl₂:EtOAc), the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 226–227 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 351 (M+1).

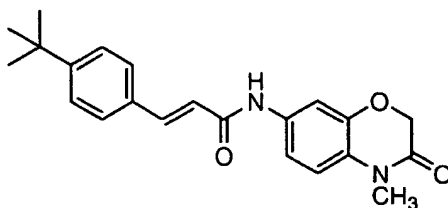
Example 10

(2E)-N-(2H,3H,4H-Benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-7-yl)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

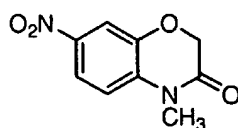
- 10 To a solution of borane-THF complex (2.5 mL, 2.5 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich), magnetically stirred at 0 °C under N₂ in a round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser, was added 7-amino-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 9(b)**, (160 mg, 1.0 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 2 h, then treated with EtOH (0.5 mL) and reflux
- 15 continued for an additional 1 h. The mixture was treated with cond HCl (0.5 mL) and reflux continued for an additional 1 h. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the residue treated with 1 N NaOH (5 mL) and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 20 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the crude aniline [MS (ESI,
- 20 pos. ion) *m/z*: 151 (M+1)]. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and the crude aniline, after purification by silica gel chromatography (85:15 CH₂Cl₂:EtOAc), provided the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 186–188 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 337 (M+1).

- 213 -

Example 11



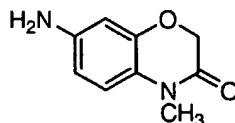
(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-methyl-3-oxo(2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-7-yl))prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) **4-Methyl-7-nitro-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 7(a)**, 7-nitro-2H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 9(a)**, (970 mg, 25 mmol), benzyltrimethylammonium chloride (110 mg, 0.50 mmol, Aldrich), iodomethane (0.47 mL, 7.5 mmol, Aldrich) and CsOH hydrate (4.2 g, 25 mmol, Aldrich), after purification by silica gel chromatography (9:1 hexane:EtOAc), provided the title product. MS (ESI, neg. ion) m/z : 207 ($M-1$).

10



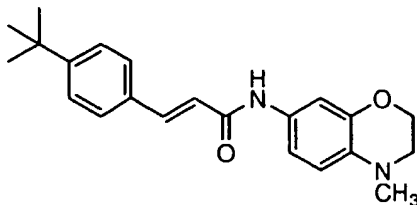
(b) **7-Amino-4-methyl-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3(a)**, 4-methyl-7-nitro-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 11(a)**, (1.0 g, 5.0 mmol) provided, after recrystallization from EtOH, the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 179 ($M+1$).

15

(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-methyl-3-oxo(2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-7-yl))prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and 7-amino-4-methyl-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 11b**, (164 mg, 1.0 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (85:15 CH_2Cl_2 :EtOAc), the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 194–195 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 365 ($M+1$).

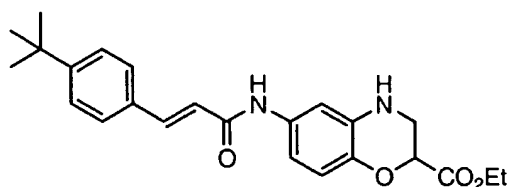
25

- 214 -

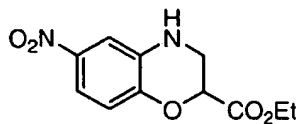
Example 12

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-methyl(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-7-yl))prop-2-enamide.

- 5 Analogous to the procedure used for the preparation of **Example 10**, 7-amino-4-methyl-2H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-3-one, **Example 11(b)**, (180 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (85:15 CH₂Cl₂:EtOAc), the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 232–233 °C. MS
- 10 (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 351 (M+1).

Example 13

Ethyl 6-((2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoylamino)-2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-2-carboxylate.

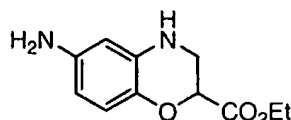


15

- (a) **Ethyl 6-nitro-2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-2-carboxylate.** A solution of ethyl 2,3-dibromopropionate (4.8 mL, 33 mmol, Aldrich) in acetone (10 mL, Aldrich) was added to a mixture of 2-amino-4-nitrophenol (4.6 g, 30 mmol, Aldrich) in 80 mL of acetone in a 150 mL round-bottomed flask at 25 °C. After the addition, the mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 48 h. The solvent was removed in vacuo, and the residue was treated with water (30 mL) and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 50 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with satd NaCl (10 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The
- 20

- 215 -

residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (9:1 CH₂Cl₂:EtOAc) to give the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 253 (M+1).

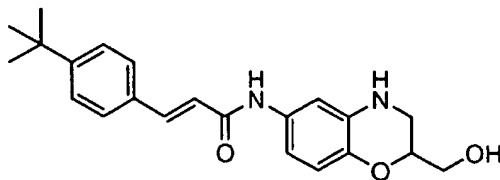


(b) **Ethyl 6-amino-2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-2-carboxylate.**

5 Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3(a)**, ethyl 6-nitro-2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-2-carboxylate, **Example 13(a)**, (1.3 g, 5.0 mmol) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 223 (M+1).

(c). Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (1.3 g, 6.4 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and ethyl 6-amino-2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-2-carboxylate, **Example 13(b)**, (1.4 g, 6.4 mmol)
10 provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (85:15 CH₂Cl₂:EtOAc), the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 207–208 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 409 (M+1).

Example 14

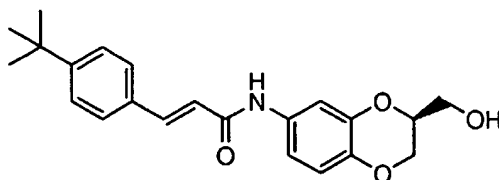


15 **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[2-(hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H,4H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-oxazaperhydroin-6-yl)]prop-2-enamide.**

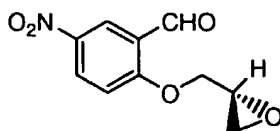
A solution of ethyl 6-[(2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoylamino]-2H,3H,4H-benzo[e]1,4-oxazaperhydroine-2-carboxylate, **Example 13**, (410 mg, 1.0 mmol) in THF (5 mL, Aldrich), magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask under N₂ at 0 °C, was treated with lithium borohydride (1.5 mL, 3.0 mmol, 2.0 M in THF, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C, and stirred at that temperature for 3 h. The reaction was quenched by the addition of satd NH₄Cl (5 mL), stirred for 30 min at 25 °C and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 15 mL).
20 The combined organic extract was washed with satd NaCl, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (1:1

- 216 -

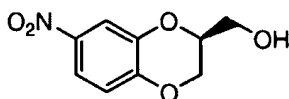
CH₂Cl₂:EtOAc) provided the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 165–167 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 367 (M+1).

Example 15

- 5 **(2E)-N-[(3S)-3-(Hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)]-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**



- (a) **2-[[[(2R)Oxiran-2-yl)methoxy]-5-nitrobenzaldehyde.** A mixture of (*R*)-glycidyl tosylate (1.1 g, 5 mmol, Aldrich), 2-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzaldehyde
 10 (840 mg, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich) and solid K₂CO₃ (1.4 g, 10 mmol) in DMF (5 mL, Aldrich) was magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 100 °C under N₂ for 30 min. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C, water (20 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined extracts were washed with water (2 x 20 mL), satd NaCl (10 mL), dried
 15 over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (4:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 224 (M+1).

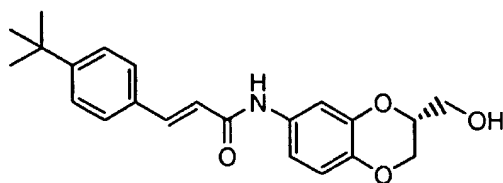


- (b) **((2S)-7-Nitro-2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-2-yl)methan-1-ol.** To a solution
 20 of 2-[[[(2R)oxiran-2-yl)methoxy]-5-nitrobenzaldehyde, **Example 15(a)**, (670 mg, 3.0 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL), magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 0 °C, was added 86% *m*-chloroperbenzoic acid (350 mg, 2.0 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at that temperature for 18 h. The mixture was then diluted with CH₂Cl₂ (20 mL), washed with 10%
 25 Na₂S₂O₃ (3 mL), NaHCO₃ (3 x 5 mL), satd NaCl (3 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄,

- 217 -

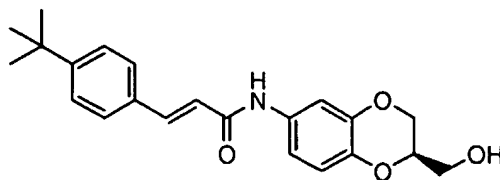
filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was treated with MeOH (20 mL) and 1 N NaOH (6 mL) and stirred at 25 °C for 16 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (10 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over Na₂SO₄,
 5 filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (3:2 hexane:EtOAc) provided the product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 212 (M+1).

(c) (2E)-N-[(3S)-3-(Hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)]-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. A mixture of ((2S)-7-nitro-2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-2-yl)methan-1-ol, **Example 15(b)**, (110 mg, 0.5 mmol) and
 10 10% Pd on carbon (20 mg, Aldrich) in MeOH (5 mL), in a round-bottomed flask, was magnetically stirred under 1 atm H₂ for 2 h. The mixture was purged with N₂, filtered through a pad of Celite and concentrated in vacuo to provide the crude aniline [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 182 (M+1)]. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (102 mg, 0.5 mmol, EMKA
 15 Chemie) and the crude aniline, provided the title product as a white solid. MP 169–171 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 368 (M+1).

Example 16

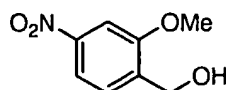
(2E)-N-[(3R)-3-(Hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)]-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

20 Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 15**, the title product was prepared starting from (*S*)-glycidyl tosylate (Aldrich), 2-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzaldehyde (Aldrich) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (EMKA Chemie). MP 170–171 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 368 (M+1).

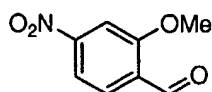
Example 17

- 218 -

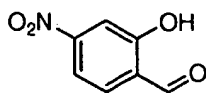
(2E)-N-[(2R)-2-(Hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)]-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



- (a) **(2-Methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)methan-1-ol.** To a solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzoic acid (2.0 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) in THF (30 mL), magnetically stirred at 0 °C under N₂ in a round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser, was added borane-THF complex (30 mL, 30 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux overnight. The reaction was quenched by the careful addition of MeOH (5 mL), followed by 1 N NaOH (30 mL). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL), the combined organic extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the product. MS (ESI, neg. ion) *m/z*: 182 (M-1).



- (b) **2-Methoxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde.** A mixture of (2-methoxy-4-nitrophenyl)methan-1-ol, **Example 17(a)**, (1.6 g, 8.9 mmol) and MnO₂ (15 g, 180 mmol, Aldrich) in 1:1 hexane: CH₂Cl₂ (60 mL) was magnetically stirred at 40 °C for 3 h. The solid was removed by filtration and washed with CH₂Cl₂. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo and the residue was recrystallized from EtOAc and hexane to give the title product. MS (ESI, neg. ion) *m/z*: 180 (M-1).

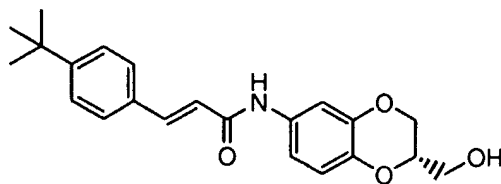


- (c) **2-Hydroxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde.** To a solution of 2-methoxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde, **Example 17(b)**, (190 mg, 1.0 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL), magnetically stirred at -78 °C in a round-bottomed flask, was added BBr₃ (0.19 mL, 2.0 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at that temperature for 2 h. The reaction mixture was then cooled to -78 °C, and treated with MeOH (5 mL). The mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C, stirred at that temperature for 30 min, then concentrated in vacuo. Purification

- 219 -

by silica gel chromatography (3:2 hexane:EtOAc) provided 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde. MS (ESI, neg. ion) m/z : 166 ($M-1$).

- (d) (2E)-N-[(2R)-2-(Hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)]-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 15**, the title product was obtained as a white solid from 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde, **Example 17(c)**, (*S*)-glycidyl tosylate (Aldrich) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (EMKA-Chemie). MP 159–160 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 368 ($M+1$).

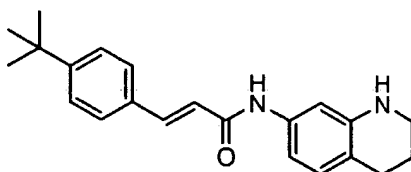
Example 18

10

(2E)-N-[(2S)-2-(Hydroxymethyl)(2H,3H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)]-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

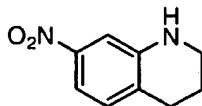
- Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 15**, the title product was prepared starting from 2-hydroxy-4-nitrobenzaldehyde, **Example 17(c)**, (*R*)-glycidyl tosylate (Aldrich) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (EMKA Chemie). MP 169–170 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 368 ($M+1$).

15

Example 19

20

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)prop-2-enamide.

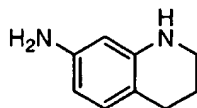


(a) 7-Nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline. To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline (6.3 mL, 50 mmol,

- 220 -

Aldrich) and 96% H₂SO₄ (42 mL). The mixture was stirred until all of the amine had dissolved, then cooled to 0 °C and treated with KNO₃ (5.9 g, 59 mmol) in portions. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred overnight at that temperature. The mixture was then cooled to 0 °C and

- 5 neutralized with solid NaOH followed by 5 N NaOH until pH 11 was reached. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and the extract was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (8:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided 7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline as an orange solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z* 179 (M+1).



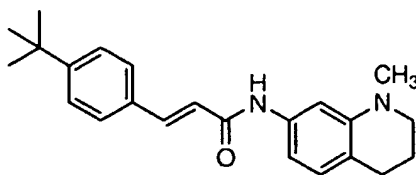
10

(b) **7-1,2,3,4-Tetrahydroquinolylamine**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3(a)**, 7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, **Example 19(a)**, (0.35 g, 2.0 mmol) provided the aniline as a pale gray oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 149 (M+1).

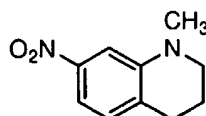
- 15 (c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolylamine, **Example 19(b)**, (280 mg, 1.9 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (0.33 g, 1.6 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (3:1 hexane:EtOAc) then
- 20 recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane, the title product as a yellow solid. MP 225-227 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 335 (M+1).

- 221 -

Example 20



(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methyl(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl))-prop-2-enamide.



5

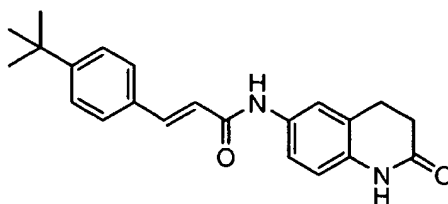
(a) **1-methyl-7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline.** To a solution of 7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydro-quinoline, **Example 19(a)**, (0.36 g, 2 mmol) in DMF (10 mL), magnetically stirred under N₂ at 0 °C in a 15 mL round-bottomed flask, was added sodium hydride (0.12 g, 3 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich). After stirring for 10 min, the reaction mixture was treated with iodomethane (0.24 mL, 4 mmol, Aldrich) dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h, at 25 °C for an additional 1 h, then partitioned between EtOAc and satd NaCl. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (40 mL) and the combined organic extract was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (7:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the product as an orange oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 193 (M+1).

(b) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methyl(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl))-prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 19**, steps (b)-(c), 1-methyl-7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, **Example 20(a)**, (240 mg, 1.3 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (0.23 g, 1.1 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (4:1 hexane:EtOAc) then recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane, the title product as a yellow solid. MP 200-202 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 349 (M+1).

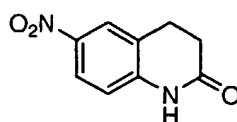
20

- 222 -

Example 21



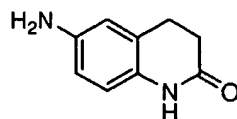
(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2-oxo(6-1,3,4-trihydroquinolyl))prop-2-enamide.



5

- (a) **6-Nitro-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one.** To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 3,4-dihydro-2(1H)-quinolinone (1.47 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) and 96% H₂SO₄ (8.3 mL). The mixture was stirred until all of the material was dissolved, then cooled to 0 °C and treated with KNO₃ (1.2 g, 11.7 mmol) in portions. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at that temperature overnight. The mixture was basified to pH 9 with 35% NaOH, resulting in a precipitate. The solid was collected by filtration, washed with water and dried in vacuo at 50 °C to provide the title product as a yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 193 (M+1).

10



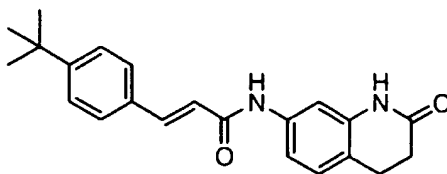
15

- (b) **6-Amino-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3(a)**, 6-nitro-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one, **Example 21(a)**, (1.7 g, 8.9 mmol) was converted to the title product as a tan solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 163 (M+1).
- (c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2-oxo(6-1,3,4-trihydroquinolyl))prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 6-amino-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one, **Example 21(b)**, (0.68 g, 4.2 mmol) and 4-tert-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (0.86 g, 4.2 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after recrystallization from MeOH, the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 275-276 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 349 (M+1).

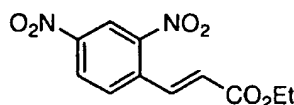
20

25

- 223 -

Example 22

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2-oxo(7-1,3,4-trihydroquinolyl))prop-2-enamide.

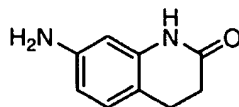


5

(a) Ethyl 3-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)prop-2-enoate. A suspension of sodium hydride (2.0 g, 50 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich) in anhydrous THF (100 mL) was magnetically stirred under N₂ at 25 °C and treated dropwise with triethyl phosphonoacetate (10 mL, 11 g, 51 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h at 25 °C then treated with 2,4-dinitrobenzaldehyde (9.0 g, 46 mmol, Aldrich) in portions. After stirring overnight at 25 °C, the reaction was quenched by the addition of water (50 mL) and concentrated in vacuo to remove the THF. The remaining aqueous mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 150 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with water (4 x 100 mL), satd NaCl (75 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (1:4 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as a dark oil.

10

15



(b) 7-Amino-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one. Ethyl 3-(2,4-dinitrophenyl)prop-2-enoate, **Example 22(a)**, (3.0 g, 11 mmol) was dissolved in glacial acetic acid (240 mL), treated with 10% Pd on carbon (2.4 g, Aldrich) and hydrogenated on a Parr shaker apparatus at 65 °C, under 60 psi H₂, for 3 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C, purged with N₂, filtered through Celite and the filtercake washed with acetic acid (200 mL) and EtOH (200 mL). The combined filtrate was concentrated in vacuo, then treated with 1 N NaOH (150 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with satd

20

25

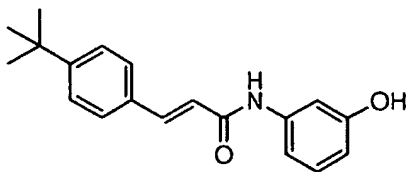
- 224 -

NaCl (50 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo.

Purification by silica gel chromatography (EtOAc) provided the title product as a pale yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 163 (M+1).

- (c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2-oxo(7-1,3,4-trihydroquinolyl))prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 7-amino-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one, **Example 22(b)**, (300 mg, 1.8 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (370 mg, 1.8 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided the title product as white crystals. MP 288-290 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 349 (M+1).

Example 23

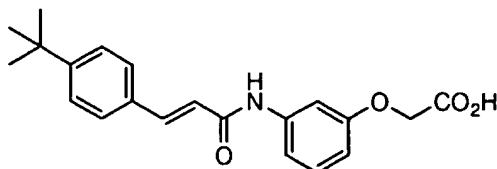


10

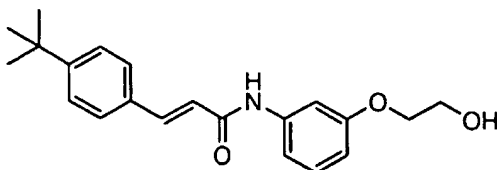
- (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-hydroxyphenyl)prop-2-enamide**. To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (530 mg, 2.43 mmol, EMKA-Chemie), CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL), and DMF (10 uL, Aldrich) under N₂. The solution was treated dropwise with oxalyl chloride (3.0 mL, 6.0 mmol, 2.0 M in CH₂Cl₂, Aldrich) then stirred at 25 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and treated with 3-aminophenol (265 mg, 2.43 mmol, Aldrich), THF (20 mL) and satd K₂CO₃ (15 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight, then acidified to pH~4.5 with 1 N HCl. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 30 mL), the combined organic extract was dried and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (2:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as an oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 296 (M+1).

20

- 225 -

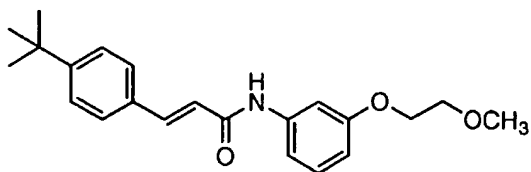
Example 24**2-(3-((2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoylamino)phenoxy)acetic acid.**

To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-hydroxyphenyl)prop-2-enamide, **Example 23**, (120 mg, 0.407 mmol), THF (10 mL), *tert*-butyl bromoacetate (60 uL, 0.407 mmol, Aldrich) and 5 N NaOH (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (20 mL), the organic extract washed with water (20 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was treated with trifluoroacetic acid (10 mL), stirred at 25 °C for 2 h, then concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (1:2 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as an off-white solid. MP 166-172 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 354 (M+1).

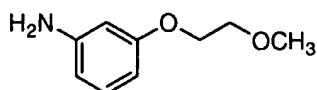
Example 25**(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[3-(2-hydroxyethoxy)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**

To a round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring and reflux condenser, was added (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-(3-hydroxyphenyl)prop-2-enamide, **Example 23**, (200 mg, 0.68 mmol), THF (10 mL), 2-bromoethanol (200 uL, 2.80 mmol, Aldrich) and 5 N NaOH (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 5 h. After allowing to cool to 25 °C, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (20 mL). The organic extract was washed with water (20 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (2:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as a colorless oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 340 (M+1).

- 226 -

Example 26

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[3-(2-methoxyethoxy)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



5

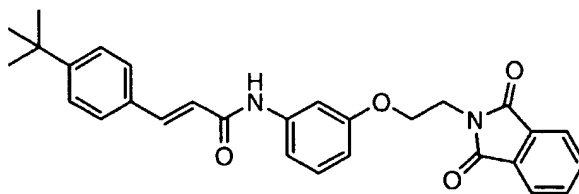
(a) 3-(2-Methoxyethoxy)phenylamine. To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 3-aminophenol (1.2 g, 11 mmol, Aldrich), THF (15 mL) and sodium hydride (440 mg, 11 mmol, 60% in mineral oil, Aldrich) at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 0 °C for 30 min, then 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (1.0 mL, 11 mmol, Aldrich) was added dropwise. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight, then cooled to 0 °C and quenched with satd NaCl (10 mL). The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (20 mL) and the organic phase was washed with water (20 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 168 (M+1).

15

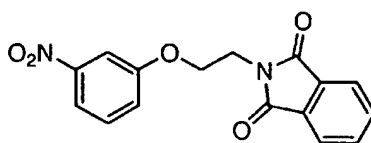
(b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[3-(2-methoxyethoxy)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 2**, 3-(2-methoxyethoxy)phenylamine, **Example 26(a)**, (350 mg, 2.45 mmol) and 4-tert-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (500 mg, 2.45 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (5:1 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a colorless oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 354 (M+1).

20

- 227 -

Example 27

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-{3-[2-(1,3-dioxobenzo[c]azolin-2-yl)ethoxy]phenyl}prop-2-enamide.

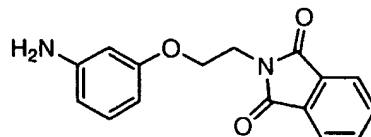


5

(a) 2-[2-(3-Nitrophenoxy)ethyl]benzo[c]azoline-1,3-dione. To a round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring, an addition funnel and a reflux condenser, was added 3-nitrophenol (2.0 g, 14 mmol, Fluka), triphenylphosphine (4.9 g, 19 mmol, Aldrich) and DMF (20 mL). A solution of N-[2-hydroxyethyl] phthalimide (2.7 mg, 14 mmol, Aldrich) and diethyl azodicarboxylate (3.3 g, 19 mmol, Aldrich) in DMF (20 mL) was added dropwise through the addition funnel at 25 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 12 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo, dissolved in EtOAc (55 mL), and washed with satd NaCl (20 mL) and water (20 mL). The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (2:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 313 (M+1).

10

15



(b) 2-[2-(3-Aminophenoxy)ethyl]benzo[c]azoline-1,3-dione. In a round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring, a solution of 2-[2-(3-nitrophenoxy)ethyl]benzo[c]azoline-1,3-dione, **Example 27(a)**, (1.9 g, 6.1 mmol) in 0.5% acetic acid in EtOAc (10 mL), under N₂, was treated with 10% Pd on carbon (500 mg, Aldrich). The suspension was purged with H₂ and stirred under 1 atm H₂ at 25 °C overnight. The suspension was purged with N₂ and filtered

20

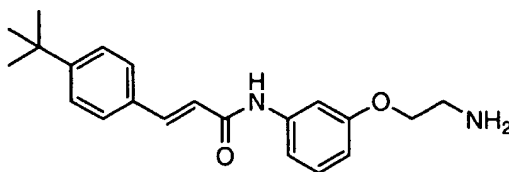
- 228 -

through a pad of Celite. The solvent was removed in vacuo to provide the title product.

(c) (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-{3-[2-(1,3-dioxobenzo[c]azolin-2-yl)ethoxy]phenyl}prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare

- 5 **Example 2**, 2-[2-(3-aminophenoxy)ethyl]benzo[c]azoline-1,3-dione, **Example 27(b)**, (1.7 g, 6.1 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (1.2 g, 6.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (3:1 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as an off-white film. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 469 (M+1).

10

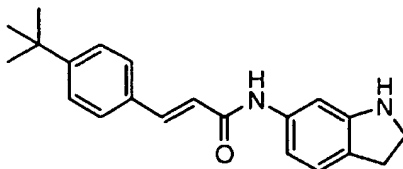
Example 28

(2E)-N-[3-(2-Aminoethoxy)phenyl]-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

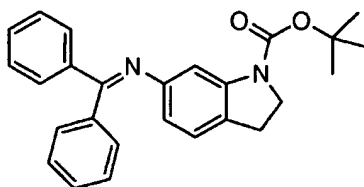
- To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added **Example 27**, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-{3-[2-(1,3-dioxobenzo[c]azolin-2-yl)ethoxy]phenyl}prop-2-enamide, (856 mg, 1.83 mmol), EtOH (15 mL) and hydrazine (574 μ L, 18.3 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 2 h. The mixture was concentrated in vacuo, the residue dissolved in EtOAc (40 mL), washed with 10% K_2CO_3 (15 mL), water (15 mL), dried over Na_2SO_4 , filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel
- 15 chromatography (step gradient, EtOAc followed by 1:1 EtOAc:EtOH) provided
- 20 the title product as an oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 339 (M+1).

- 229 -

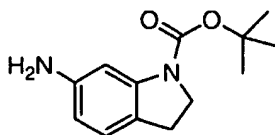
Example 29



(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-indolin-6-ylprop-2-enamide.



- 5 (a) **tert-Butyl 6-(1-aza-2,2-diphenylvinyl)indolinecarboxylate.** To a solution of benzophenone imine (0.91 g, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich) in CH_2Cl_2 (35 mL), magnetically stirred at 25 °C in a round-bottomed flask, was added a solution of 6-aminoindoline dihydrochloride (1.04 g, 5.0 mmol, Biosynth AG) in CH_2Cl_2 (40 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 12 h, then diluted with
- 10 CH_2Cl_2 (30 mL), washed with water (30 mL), satd NaCl (30 mL), dried over MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The crude product [MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 299 (M+1)] was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane and treated with di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate (8.0 mL, 8.0 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich) and 5 N aq. Na_2CO_3 (5 mL). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C until complete,
- 15 then diluted with water (30 mL), and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with satd NaCl (30 mL), dried over MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (4:1 hexane EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 399 (M+1).



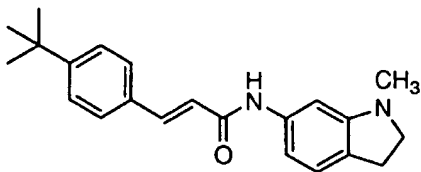
20

- (b) **tert-Butyl 6-aminoindolinecarboxylate.** In a round-bottomed flask, a solution of *tert*-butyl 6-(1-aza-2,2-diphenylvinyl)indolinecarboxylate, **Example 29(a)**, (0.80 g, 2.0 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (10 mL) was treated with 1 N aq. HCl (10 mL). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred overnight at 25 °C, then

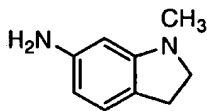
- 230 -

diluted with water (20 mL) and extracted with ethyl ether (30 mL). The aqueous phase was treated with 5 N NaOH (10 mL) and extracted with ethyl ether (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (3:2 hexane EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 235 (M+1).

(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-indolin-6-ylprop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, *tert*-butyl 6-aminoindoline-carboxylate, **Example 29(b)**, (230 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (7:3 hexane EtOAc), a crude product which was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) and treated with 4 N HCl in dioxane (5 mL, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 1 h, then washed with 5 N NaOH (15 mL), satd NaCl (15 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane EtOAc) provided the title product. MP 153-167 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 321 (M+1).

Example 30

(2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindolin-6-yl)prop-2-enamide.

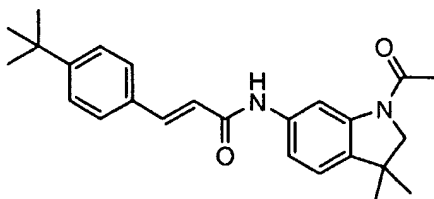


(a) **1-Methylindoline-6-ylamine**. To a round-bottomed flask was added 6-nitroindoline (1.64 g, 10.0 mmol, Aldrich), 37% aq. formaldehyde (2.35 g, 30.0 mmol, Aldrich) and THF (40 mL). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C and treated with sodium cyanoborohydride (1.89 g, 30.0 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 25 °C for 30 min, then washed with satd Na₂CO₃. The aqueous phase was extracted with ethyl ether, the organic phases combined and concentrated in vacuo to a residue. Analogous to the procedure of Goswami, P.; Chowdhury, P.; Indian J Chem, Sect B, **1997**, 36

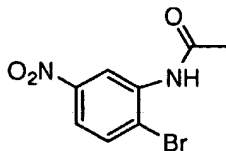
- 231 -

(2), 185-186, the crude residue was dissolved in tetrahydrofuran (60 mL) and added to Zn dust (0.43 g, 6.6 mmol, Aldrich) and $\text{AlCl}_3 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ (9.6 g, 40 mmol, Aldrich) in water (2 mL), magnetically stirred at 25 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 16 h, then filtered. The filtrate was added to cold water (300 mL) and extracted with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a brown solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 149 (M+1).

(b) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindolin-6-yl)prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 1-methylindoline-6-ylamine, **Example 30(a)**, (150 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided the title product as an amorphous yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 335 (M+1).

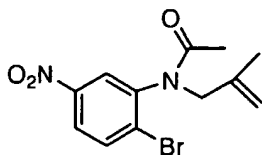
Example 31

15 **(2E)-N-(1-Acetyl-3,3-dimethylindolin-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**

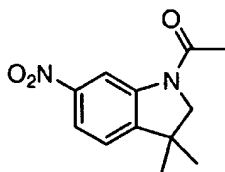


(a) **N-(2-Bromo-5-nitrophenyl)acetamide.** A solution of 2-bromo-5-nitroaniline (43 g, 0.20 mol, Aldrich) in glacial acetic acid (1.3 L), magnetically stirred at 25 °C, was treated with acetic anhydride (20 mL, 0.21 mol). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 25 °C overnight, then quenched by pouring into water (6 L). The precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with water, and dried in vacuo to provide the title product as an off white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 259, 262 (M+1, M+3).

- 232 -



- (b) **N-(2-Bromo-5-nitrophenyl)-N-(2-methylprop-2-enyl)acetamide.** To a flame-dried round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring and an addition funnel, was added N-(2-bromo-5-nitrophenyl)acetamide, **Example 31(a)**,
 5 (48 g, 0.19 mol), solid potassium carbonate (103 g, 744 mmol) and anhydrous DMF (830 mL). The resulting solution was stirred at 25 °C and treated dropwise, through the addition funnel, with a solution of 3-bromo-2-methylpropene (38 mL, 380 mmol, Aldrich) in anhydrous DMF (100 mL) over 45 min. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight, then filtered and treated with satd
 10 NaHCO₃. The organic layer was removed and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 150 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with water (4 x 70 mL), satd NaCl (70 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a golden solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 313, 315 (M+1, M+3).



- 15 (c). **1-Acetyl-3,3-dimethyl-6-nitroindoline.** To a flame-dried round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring, was added N-(2-bromo-5-nitrophenyl)-N-(2-methylprop-2-enyl)acetamide, **Example 31(b)**, (55 g, 0.18 mol), tetraethylammonium chloride hydrate (30.8 g, 186 mmol, Aldrich), sodium
 20 formate (14.4 g, 212 mmol, Aldrich), sodium acetate (36.3 g, 443 mmol) and anhydrous DMF (443 mL). The resulting solution was purged with N₂ and treated with palladium (II) acetate (3.97 g, 17.7 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred in an oil bath at 80 °C for 15 h, then allowed to cool to 25 °C and filtered through a pad of Celite. The Celite was washed with EtOAc and the
 25 combined filtrate was washed with satd NaHCO₃ (500 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 100 mL) and the combined organic extract was washed with water (4 x 100 mL), satd NaCl (2 x 100 mL), dried over MgSO₄,

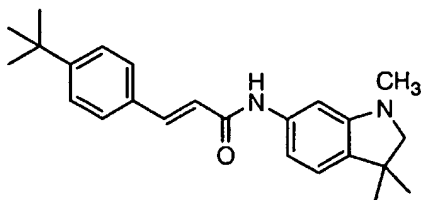
- 233 -

filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide 1-acetyl-3,3-dimethyl-6-nitroindoline as a brown solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 235 (M+1).

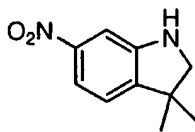
(d) (2E)-N-(1-Acetyl-3,3-dimethylindolin-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. To a solution of 1-acetyl-3,3-dimethyl-6-nitroindoline, **Example**

5 **31(c)**, (110 mg, 0.47 mmol) in ethyl ether (3 mL), magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 0 °C, was added tin (II) chloride dihydrate (0.67 g, 2.96 mmol, Aldrich) and cond HCl (0.3 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min, allowed to warm to 25 °C then stirred at that temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was washed with 10 N NaOH (10 mL), extracted with EtOAc and concentrated in vacuo. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example**
10 **1**, the crude product and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (92 mg, 0.45 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (2:3 hexane:EtOAc), the title product. MP 121 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 391 (M+1).

15

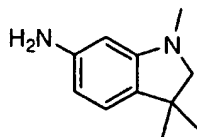
Example 32

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1,3,3-trimethylindolin-6-yl)prop-2-enamide.



(a) 3,3-Dimethyl-6-nitroindoline. To a round-bottomed flask, equipped with
20 magnetic stirring and a reflux condenser, was added 1-acetyl-3,3-dimethyl-6-nitroindoline, **Example 31(c)**, (1.73 g, 7.39 mmol) and EtOH (20 mL). The solution was treated with 12 N HCl (20 mL) then stirred and heated at reflux for 2 h. The reaction mixture was cooled to 0 °C, providing a precipitate which was collected by filtration and dried in vacuo to afford the title product as an off-white
25 solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 193 (M+1).

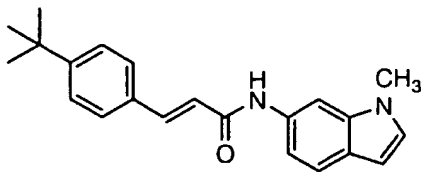
- 234 -



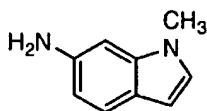
(b) **1,3,3-Trimethylindoline-6-ylamine**. A solution of 3,3-dimethyl-6-nitroindoline, **Example 32(a)**, (0.23 g, 1.2 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (15 mL) was magnetically stirred at 25 °C and treated with sodium hydride (0.14 g, 3.6 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich), followed by iodomethane (0.17, 1.3 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 3 h, then quenched with water (40 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide a residue [MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 207 (M+1)] which was immediately dissolved in ethyl ether (5 mL), magnetically stirred at 0 °C, and treated with tin (II) chloride dihydrate (1.7 g, 7.5 mmol, Aldrich) and cond HCl (0.8 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min, allowed to warm to 25 °C, then stirred at that temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was washed with 10 N NaOH (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined extracts were concentrated in vacuo and purified by silica gel chromatography to provide the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 177 (M+1).

(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1,3,3-trimethylindolin-6-yl)prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 1,3,3-trimethylindoline-6-ylamine, **Example 32(b)**, (176 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (3:2 hexane:EtOAc), the title product. MP 90-101 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 363 (M+1).

- 235 -

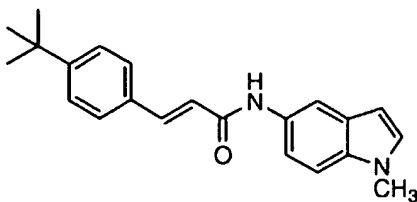
Example 33

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindol-6-yl)prop-2-enamide.

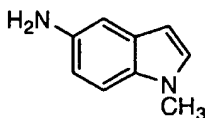


- 5 **(a) 1-Methylindole-6-ylamine.** To a round-bottomed flask was added 6-nitroindole (0.81 g, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich) and anhydrous DMF (40 mL). The solution was stirred magnetically and treated with sodium hydride (0.40 g, 10 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich) followed by iodomethane (0.71 gm 10 mmol, Aldrich). Stirring was continued at 25 °C for 30 min, then the
- 10 reaction mixture was quenched by the addition of water (75 mL) and extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide a residue which was dissolved in EtOH (40 mL), treated with 10% Pd on carbon (400 mg, Aldrich), purged with H₂ and magnetically stirred under 1 atm H₂ for 4 h. The suspension was purged with N₂, filtered through a pad of Celite and concentrated
- 15 in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (50:50 hexane:EtOAc) provided the aniline. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 147 (M+1).
- (b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindol-6-yl)prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 1-methylindole-6-ylamine, **Example 33(a)**, (150 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic
- 20 acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol), after purification by silica gel chromatography (65:35 hexane:EtOAc), provided the title product as a yellow solid. MP 95 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 333 (M+1).

- 236 -

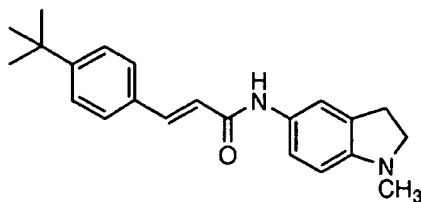
Example 34

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindol-5-yl)prop-2-enamide.

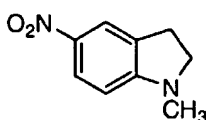


- 5 **(a) 1-Methylindole-5-ylamine.** To a round-bottomed flask was added 5-nitroindole (0.81 g, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich) and anhydrous DMF (40 mL). The solution was stirred magnetically and treated with sodium hydride (0.40 g, 10 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich) followed by iodomethane (0.71 gm 10 mmol, Aldrich). Stirring was continued at 25 °C for 30 min, then the
- 10 reaction mixture was quenched by the addition of water (75 mL) and extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide a crude residue. Analogous to the procedure of Goswami, P.; Chowdhury, P.; *Indian J Chem, Sect B*, **1997**, 36 (2), 185-186, the crude residue was dissolved in THF (40 mL) and added to Zn dust (0.22 g, 3.3 mmol, Aldrich) and AlCl₃·6H₂O
- 15 (4.78 g, 19.8 mmol, Aldrich) in water (1 mL), magnetically stirred at 25 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 16 h, then filtered. The filtrate was added to cold water (300 mL) and extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 100 mL). The combined organic extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 147 (M+1).
- 20 **(b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindol-5-yl)prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 1-methylindole-5-ylamine, **Example 34(a)**, (150 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (65:35 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a crystalline yellow
- 25 solid. MP 171 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 333 (M+1).

- 237 -

Example 35

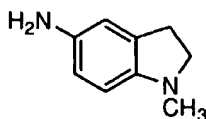
(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindolin-5-yl)prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) 1-Methyl-5-nitroindoline. To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 5-nitroindoline (0.82, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich), iodomethane (0.71 g, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich), sodium hydroxide (0.24, 6 mmol) and DMF (20 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 3 h, diluted with water (50 mL), extracted with EtOAc (3 x 40 mL) and the combined extracts were concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (97:3 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 179 (M+1).

10



(b) 1-Methylindoline-5-ylamine. To a solution of 1-methyl-5-nitroindoline, **Example 35(a)**, (0.55 g, 3.1 mmol) in ethyl ether (20 mL), magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 0 °C, was added tin (II) chloride dihydrate (4.5 g, 20 mmol, Aldrich) and cond HCl (2.5 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min, allowed to warm to 25 °C then stirred at that temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was washed with 10N NaOH (30 mL) and the aqueous phase extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL). The combined organic extracts were concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc) provided the aniline. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 149 (M+1).

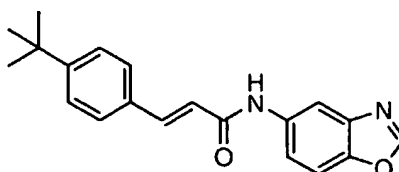
20

(c) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(1-methylindolin-5-yl)prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 1-methylindoline-5-ylamine, **Example 35(b)**, (150, 1.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid

25

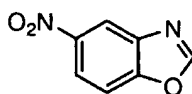
- 238 -

(200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (60:40 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a crystalline yellow solid. MP 194 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 335 (M+1).

Example 36

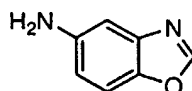
5

(2E)-N-Benzoxazol-5-yl-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



(a) 5-Nitrobenzoxazole. Following the procedure of A. R. Katritzky et al. *Heterocycles* **1995**, *41*, 345, to a round-bottomed flask was added 2-amino-4-nitrophenol (5.0 g, 32 mmol, Aldrich), trimethyl orthoformate (20 mL, 180 mmol, Aldrich) and *p*-toluenesulfonic acid monohydrate (300 mg, 1.6 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred in a 95 °C oil bath for 1 h, and then allowed to cool to 25 °C. The mixture was cooled to 0 °C to provide a precipitate which was collected by filtration, washed with cold toluene, pentane, then dried in vacuo to afford the title product as a dark brown powder.

15



(b) Benzoxazole-5-ylamine. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3(a)**, 5-nitrobenzoxazole, **Example 36(a)**, (2.4 g, 15 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (step gradient, 7:3 then 4.5:5.5 then 3:7 hexane:EtOAc), the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 135 (M+1).

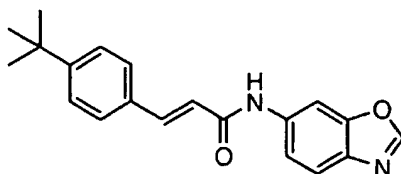
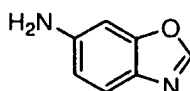
20

(c) (2E)-N-Benzoxazol-5-yl-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, benzoxazole-5-ylamine, **Example 36(b)**, (530 mg, 4.0 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (820 mg, 4.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after twice being purified by silica gel chromatography (7:3 hexane:EtOAc then 1.25% MeOH in CH₂Cl₂), the title product as white crystals. MP 177 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 321 (M+1).

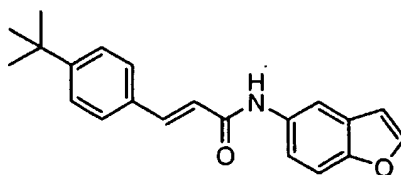
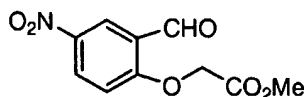
25

- 239 -

Example 37**(2E)-N-Benzoxazol-6-yl-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**

- 5 **(a) Benzoxazole-6-ylamine.** Analogous to the procedure described for the preparation of **Example 36**, steps (a)-(b), 2-amino-5-nitrophenol (5.0 g, 32 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product as a pale tan solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 135 (M+1).
- 10 **(b) (2E)-N-Benzoxazol-6-yl-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, benzoxazole-6-ylamine, **Example 37(a)**, (1.8 g, 13 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (2.7 g, 13 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (6:4:0.2 CH₂Cl₂:hexane:MeOH), the title product as a tan solid. MP 147-148 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 321 (M+1).

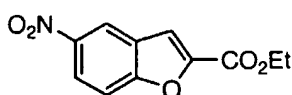
15

Example 38**(2E)-N-Benzo[b]furan-5-yl-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**

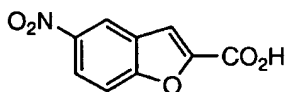
- 20 **(a) Methyl 2-(2-formyl-4-nitrophenoxy)acetate.** To a round-bottomed flask was added a suspension of 2-hydroxy-5-nitrobenzaldehyde (10 g, 60 mmol, Aldrich) in anhydrous EtOH (180 mL). The suspension was treated with KOH (4.4 g, 66 mmol) and heated under N₂ with magnetic stirring in a 65 °C oil bath for 45 min. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C and concentrated in vacuo. Anhydrous DMF (180 mL) was added, and the reaction flask was

- 240 -

- cooled in an ice bath and charged with methyl bromoacetate (10 mL, 110 mL, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred for 3.5 h at 25 °C, then the solvent was removed in vacuo. Water (200 mL) was added, and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (3 × 50 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with 1 M
- 5 H₃PO₄, satd NaHCO₃, and satd NaCl. After drying over MgSO₄, the organic layer was filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was recrystallized from CH₂Cl₂ and hexane to afford the title product as a pale yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 240 (M+1).

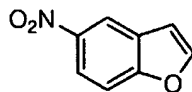


- 10 (b) **Ethyl 5-nitrobenzo[d]furan-2-carboxylate**. To a 250 mL round-bottomed flask was added methyl 2-(2-formyl-4-nitrophenoxy)acetate, **Example 38(a)**, (5.3 g, 22 mmol), EtOH (110 mL) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (3.7 g, 24 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 20 h, then concentrated to approximately half of its volume in vacuo. After cooling
- 15 the mixture in an ice bath for 20 min, a precipitate formed which was collected by filtration and washed with ice cold EtOH. The resulting pale yellow solid was dried in vacuo to provide the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 253 (M+H₂O).

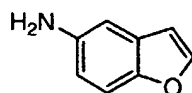


- 20 (c) **5-Nitrobenzo[b]furan-2-carboxylic acid**. To a 250 mL round-bottomed flask was added ethyl 5-nitrobenzo[d]furan-2-carboxylate, **Example 38(b)**, (1.0 g, 4.3 mmol), EtOH (10 mL), and KOH (610 mg, 11 mmol) in 10 mL of H₂O. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 24 h, then treated with 1 M H₃PO₄ (200 mL) and saturated with solid NaCl. The aqueous layer was extracted with
- 25 EtOAc (3 × 70 mL), and the combined organic extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a yellowish-white powder. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 225 (M+H₂O).

- 241 -

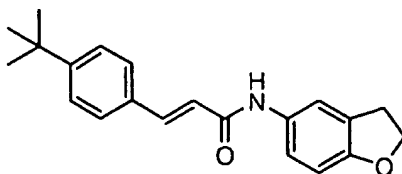


- (d). **5-Nitrobenzofuran.** To a 100 mL round-bottomed flask was added 5-nitrobenzo[b]furan-2-carboxylic acid, **Example 38(c)**, (860 mg, 4.2 mmol), copper (830 mg, 13 mmol, Aldrich), and quinoline (38 mL, Aldrich). The reaction flask was placed in a 185 °C oil bath and magnetically stirred for 20 min under N₂. After allowing to cool to 25 °C, the mixture was filtered through a 1" pad of Celite. To the filtrate was added 10% aq. HCl (300 mL) and the aqueous layer was extracted with Et₂O (3 × 100 mL). The combined ethereal layers were washed with 10% HCl (4 × 200 mL, 1 × 100 mL), satd NaHCO₃ (200 mL), and satd NaCl (100 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (10:0.25 hexanes:EtOAc) provided 5-nitrobenzofuran as a white solid.

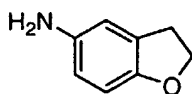


- (e) **Benzo[b]furan-5-ylamine.** To a 150 mL round-bottomed flask was added 5-nitrobenzofuran, **Example 38(d)**, (270 mg, 1.7 mmol) and ethyl ether (16 mL). The mixture was magnetically stirred at 0 °C under N₂ and treated with a solution of tin (II) chloride dihydrate (3.4 g, 15 mmol, Aldrich) in 12 M aq. HCl (2 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 10 min, then allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at that temperature for 20 h. Water and 2 N NaOH (pH > 10) were added followed by Celite (10 g). The mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and the filtrate extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was washed with 2 N NaOH, satd NaCl, dried over K₂CO₃, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a pale yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 134 (M+1).
- (f) **(2E)-N-Benzo[b]furan-5-yl-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, benzo[b]furan-5-ylamine, **Example 38(e)**, (230 mg, 1.7 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (350 mg, 1.7 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (9:1 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as white crystals. MP 149-150 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 320 (M+1).

- 242 -

Example 39

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b]furan-5-yl)prop-2-enamide.

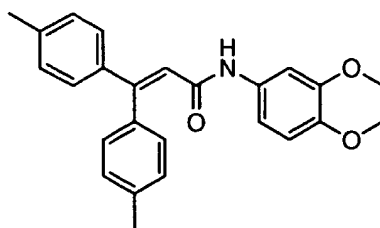


5

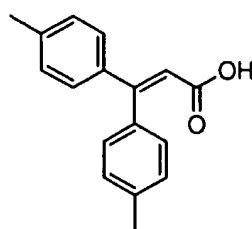
- (a) 2,3-Dihydrobenzo[b]furan-5-ylamine.** To a 150 mL round-bottomed flask was added 5-nitrobenzofuran, **Example 38(d)**, (250 mg, 1.5 mmol), EtOAc (16 mL) and 10% Pd on carbon (33 mg, Aldrich). The suspension was stirred at 25 °C under 1 atm H₂ for 24 h, then purged with N₂, filtered through Celite and concentrated in vacuo to provide the aniline as a red-brown solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 136 (M+1).
- (b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-(2,3-dihydrobenzo[b]furan-5-yl)prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 2,3-dihydrobenzo[b]furan-5-ylamine, **Example 39(a)**, (240 mg, 1.8 mmol) and 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (370 mg, 1.8 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) provided the crude title product. The product was purified by silica gel chromatography (9:1:0.25 hexane:EtOAc:MeOH) to provide 45 mg of the title product and additional impure fractions. The impure fractions were combined and concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in MeOH (25 mL), treated with 5 N NaOH (10 mL) and stirred for 1 h. The mixture was diluted with 5 N NaOH (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc. The organic phase was washed with 5 N NaOH (2 x), 5% citric acid, satd NaCl, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (8:1:0.5 hexane:EtOAc: 2 M NH₃ in MeOH) provided an additional the title product as a white solid. MP 175-176 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 322 (M+1).

25

- 243 -

Example 40

N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3,3-bis(4-methylphenyl)prop-2-enamide.

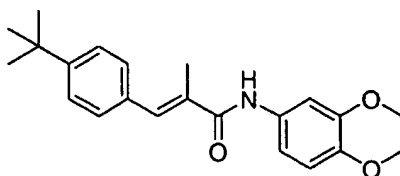


5

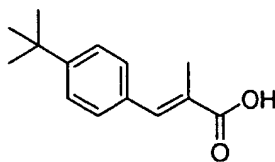
- (a) **3,3-Bis(4-methylphenyl)prop-2-enoic acid.** Triethyl phosphonoacetate (2.0 mL, 10 mmol, Aldrich) was added dropwise to a suspension of NaH (0.44 g, 11 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich) in anhydrous THF (16 mL), magnetically stirred at 0 °C under Ar, in a round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C then stirred at that temperature for 0.5 h. 4,4'-Dimethylbenzophenone (2.1 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) was added in one portion and the reaction mixture stirred and heated at reflux for 48 h. After allowing to cool to 25 °C, the reaction mixture was quenched with H₂O (30 mL) and extracted with Et₂O (4 x 10 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with H₂O (5 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to an oily residue. The residue was dissolved in 1,4-dioxane (2.5 mL), treated with H₂O (7 mL) and KOH (1.1 g, 20 mmol), then stirred and heated at reflux under Ar for 18 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C, diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and washed with Et₂O (10 mL). The aqueous phase was acidified with 1 N HCl and extracted with chloroform. The combined chloroform extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the acid as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 253 (M+1).

- 244 -

(b) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3,3-bis(4-methylphenyl)prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 3,3-bis(4-methylphenyl)prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 40(a)**, (0.50 g, 2.0 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (0.33 g, 2.2 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (chloroform), the title product as a yellow solid. MP 163–164 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 386 (M+1).

Example 41

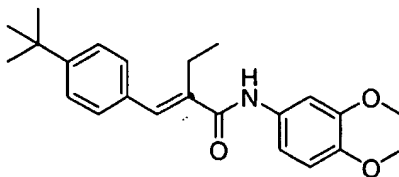
(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-2-methylprop-2-enamide.



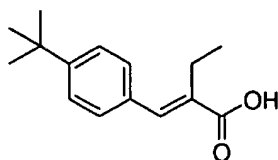
(a) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-2-methylprop-2-enoic acid**. Analogous to the procedure described for the preparation of **Example 40**, step (a), triethyl 2-phosphonopropionate (2.4 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) and 4-*tert*-butylbenzaldehyde (1.6 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product as a yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 219 (M+1).

(b) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-2-methylprop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-2-methylprop-2-enoic acid, **Example 41(a)**, (0.44 g, 2.0 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (0.33 g, 2.2 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (chloroform), the title product as an off-white solid. MP 157–158 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 352 (M+1).

- 245 -

Example 42

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-2-ethylprop-2-enamide.



5

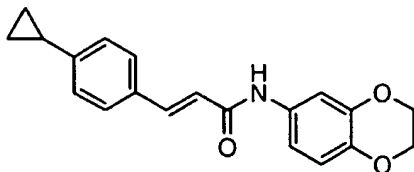
(a) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-2-ethylprop-2-enoic acid. Analogous to the procedure described for the preparation of **Example 40**, step (a), triethyl 2-phosphonobutyrate (2.5 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) and 4-*tert*-butylbenzaldehyde (1.6 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 233 (M+1).

10

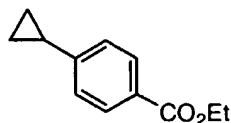
(b) (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-2-ethylprop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-2-ethylprop-2-enoic acid, **Example 42(a)**, (0.46 g, 2.0 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (0.33 g, 2.2 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (chloroform), the title product as a white solid. MP 133–134 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 366 (M+1).

15

- 246 -

Example 43

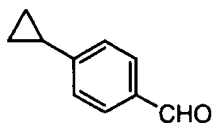
(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-(4-cyclopropylphenyl)prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) Ethyl 4-cyclopropylbenzoate. To a round-bottomed flask under N_2 was added zinc dust (0.80 g, 12.5 mmol, Aldrich), cuprous chloride (1.23 g, 12.5 mmol, Aldrich) and Et_2O (2 mL). The mixture was magnetically stirred and heated at reflux for 30 min. The suspension was treated with ethyl 4-

10 vinylbenzoate (0.85 g, 4.82 mmol, Apin) followed by methylene diiodide (1.68 g, 6.27 mmol, Aldrich) and reflux was continued for 24 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C, filtered, concentrated in vacuo and purified by silica gel chromatography (9:1 hexane:EtOAc) to provide the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 191 (M+1).



15

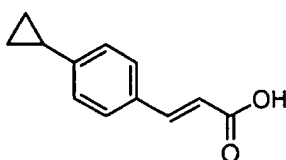
(b) 4-Cyclopropylbenzaldehyde. Ethyl 4-cyclopropylbenzoate, **Example 43(a)**, (316 mg, 1.66 mmol) was transferred to a round-bottomed flask and treated with lithium aluminum hydride (0.30 mL, 3.0 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich) under N_2 . The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 1 h, then quenched by

20 the dropwise addition of H_2O (0.5 mL) followed by 20% aq. KOH (3 mL). The suspension was filtered and the aqueous phase extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo and the crude alcohol was redissolved in anhydrous CH_2Cl_2 (2 mL). In a separate round-bottomed flask, a solution of oxalyl chloride (2.0 mL, 4.0 mmol, 2.0 M in CH_2Cl_2 , Aldrich) was magnetically

25 stirred under N_2 at -78 °C and treated dropwise with a solution of anhydrous

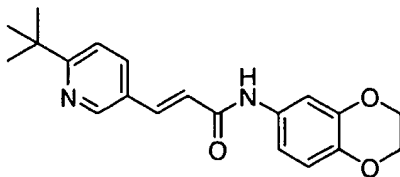
- 247 -

dimethyl sulfoxide (4.0 mL, 56 mmol, Aldrich) in anhydrous CH_2Cl_2 (2 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at -78°C for 5 min then treated dropwise with the solution of crude alcohol in CH_2Cl_2 . The reaction mixture was stirred an additional 5 min at -78°C , treated with triethylamine (2.0 mL, 14 mmol), allowed
5 to warm to 25°C and stirred at that temperature for 1 h. The reaction was quenched by the addition of H_2O and the mixture was extracted with Et_2O . The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide 230 mg (95% over two steps) of the title product.

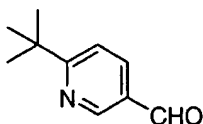


- 10 (c) **(2E)-3-(4-Cyclopropylphenyl)prop-2-enoic acid**. Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 40**, step (a), 4-cyclopropylbenzaldehyde, **Example 43(b)**, (0.23 g, 1.6 mmol) and triethyl phosphonoacetate (0.35 g, 1.6 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 189 ($M+1$).
- 15 (d) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-(4-cyclopropylphenyl)prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-(4-cyclopropylphenyl)prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 43(c)**, (130 mg, 0.69 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (104 mg, 0.69 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (65:35
20 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a clear glass. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 322 ($M+1$).

- 248 -

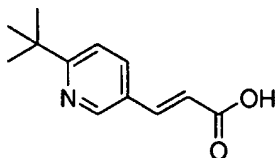
Example 44

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]-prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) 6-(tert-Butyl)pyridine-3-carbaldehyde. Analogous to the procedure of Rybakova, et al. *Zh. Org. Khim.* **1995**, 31(5), 670-673, pyridine-3-methanol (2.18 g, 20.0 mmol, Aldrich), trimethylacetic acid (10.2 g, 100 mmol, Aldrich), silver nitrate (0.68 gm 4.0 mmol, Aldrich), and 10% aq. sulfuric acid (20 mL) were combined in a round-bottomed flask. The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred and treated with a solution of ammonium persulfate (9.1 g, 40 mmol, Aldrich) in H₂O (40 mL). Evolution of gas was observed and the reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 2 h. The reaction mixture was basified to pH 9 by the addition of aq. ammonium hydroxide then extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was washed with H₂O, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the crude product by silica gel chromatography (70:30 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 164 (M+1).

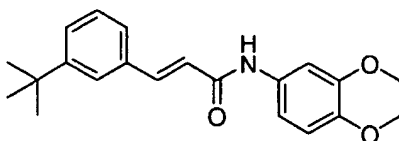
10
15

(b) (2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid. Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 40**, step (a), 6-(tert-butyl)pyridine-3-carbaldehyde, **Example 44(a)**, (0.55 g, 3.4 mmol) and triethyl phosphonoacetate (0.76 g, 3.4 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 206 (M+1).

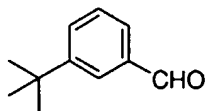
20

- 249 -

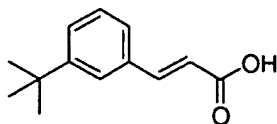
- (c) (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 44(b)**, (200 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (150 mg, 1.0 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (60:40 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a clear glass. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 339 (M+1).

Example 45

- (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[3-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



- (a) **3-(tert-Butyl)benzaldehyde**. To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 1-tert-butyl-3-methylbenzene (1 g, 6.8 mmol, Wiley), ammonium cerium (IV) nitrate (17.5 g, 29.7 mmol, Aldrich) and 50% aq. acetic acid (150 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred and heated at 90 °C for 1.5 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C and extracted with 10% EtOAc in hexane. The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo to provide the crude aldehyde.

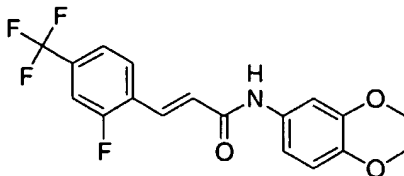


- (b) (2E)-3-[3-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid. Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 40**, step (a), 3-(tert-butyl)benzaldehyde, **Example 45(a)**, (320 mg, 2.0 mmol) and triethyl phosphonoacetate (250 mg, 2.0 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 205 (M+1).
- (c) (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[3-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[3-

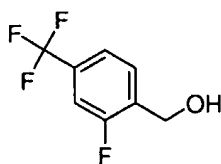
- 250 -

(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 45(b)**, (200 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (150 mg, 1.0 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (60:40 hexane:EtOAc), the title product. MP 168 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 338 (M+1).

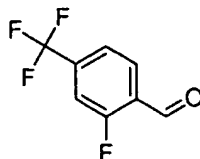
5

Example 46

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



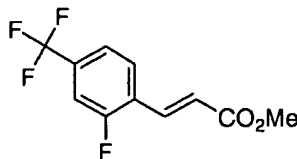
- 10 **(a) [2-Fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]methan-1-ol.** To a round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring and a reflux condenser, was added 2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (5.0 g, 24 mmol, ABCR) and borane-THF complex (72 mL, 72 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich) at 0 °C under N₂. The reaction mixture was warmed to 65 °C and stirred at that temperature for 2 h.
- 15 The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The resulting residue was dissolved in CH₂Cl₂ (100 mL) and washed with satd Na₂CO₃ (100 mL). The aqueous phase was back-extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (4 x 80 mL). The combined organic extract was washed with satd NaCl (200 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by
- 20 silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-10% EtOAc in hexane) provided the title product as a colorless oil.



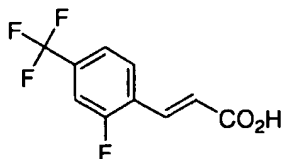
- (b) 2-Fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzaldehyde.** To a solution of [2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]methan-1-ol, **Example 46(a)**, (4.4 g, 23 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂

- 251 -

(100 mL) was added ground pyridinium dichromate (38.4 g, 102 mmol, Fluka). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight, then filtered through Celite. The Celite pad was washed with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x 50 mL) and the combined filtrate was concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient:
 5 0-5% EtOAc in hexane) provided the title product as a white slurry.



(c) **Methyl (2E)-3-[2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate.** 2-Fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzaldehyde, **Example 46(b)**, (900 mg, 4.7 mmol) in CH₂Cl₂ (5 mL) was added via cannula to a solution of carbomethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane (2.0 g, 6.1 mmol, Aldrich) in CH₂Cl₂ (15 mL), magnetically
 10 stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 0 °C. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at this temperature under N₂ overnight. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the crude material purified by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-5% EtOAc in hexane) to provide the title product as a white
 15 solid.



(d) **(2E)-3-[2-Fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid.** Methyl (2E)-3-[2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate, **Example 46(c)**, (1.6 g, 6.3 mmol) was treated with lithium hydroxide monohydrate (530 mg, 12.6 mmol, Aldrich) in wet EtOH (15 mL) and magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask
 20 at 25 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was acidified to pH < 2 with 10% aq. HCl and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL). The combined extracts were washed with satd NaCl (100 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the acid as a white solid.

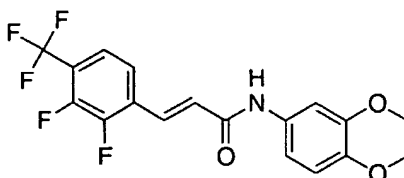
25 (e) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic

- 252 -

acid, **Example 46(d)**, (200 mg, 0.85 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (193 mg, 1.28 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-20% EtOAc in hexane) and recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane, the title product as a yellow crystalline solid. MP 174-175 °C.

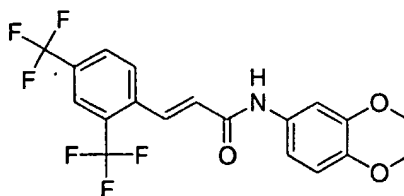
5 MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 368 (M+1).

Example 47



(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2,3-difluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, steps (b)-(e), the title product was obtained from 2,3-difluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl alcohol (ABCR) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (Aldrich) as a crystalline yellow solid. MP 169-170 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 386 (M+1).

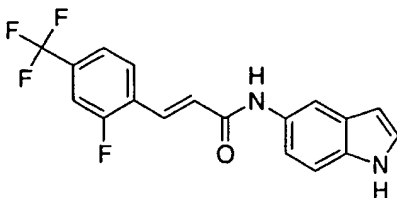
Example 48



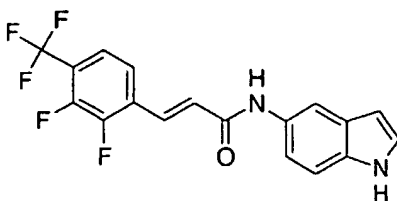
15 (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2,4-bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, steps (b)-(e), the title product was obtained from 2,4-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl alcohol (Avocado) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (Aldrich) as a crystalline yellow solid. MP 204-205 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 418 (M+1).

20

- 253 -

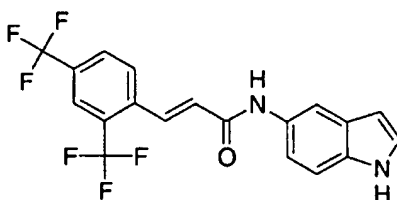
Example 49**(2E)-3-[2-Fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide.**

- Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, steps (a)-(e), the title product was obtained from 2-fluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid (ABCR) and 5-aminoindole (Aldrich) as a crystalline yellow solid. MP 203-205 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 349 (M+1).

Example 50

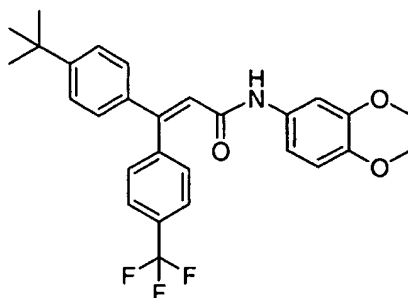
- (2E)-3-[2,3-Difluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, steps (b)-(e), the title product was obtained from 2,3-difluoro-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzyl alcohol (ABCR) and 5-aminoindole (Aldrich) as a crystalline yellow solid. MP 220-222 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 367 (M+1).

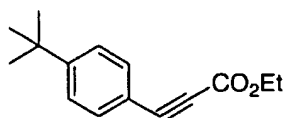
Example 51**(2E)-3-[2,4-Bis(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide.**

- Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, steps (b)-(e), the title product was obtained from 2,4-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyl alcohol (Avocado) and 5-aminoindole (Aldrich) as a crystalline yellow solid. MP 207-209 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 399 (M+1).

- 254 -

Example 52

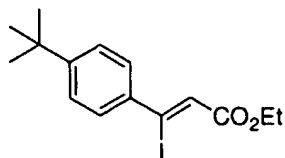
N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



5

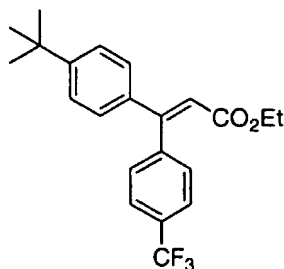
- (a). **Ethyl 3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynoate.** To a 1 L round-bottomed flask was added (4-*tert*-butyl)phenylacetylene (33.8 g, 214 mmol, GFS Chemicals) and anhydrous THF (220 mL). The solution was magnetically stirred, purged with N₂ and cooled to -78 °C, then *n*-butyllithium (136 mL, 2.5 M in
- 10 hexanes, Aldrich) was added slowly. After the addition was complete, the mixture was gradually warmed to 0 °C and stirred magnetically for 30 min. The reaction mixture was cooled to -78 °C again and ethyl chloroformate (28.6 mL, 299.2 mmol, Aldrich) was added. After allowing to warm to 25 °C and stirring overnight, the reaction was quenched with 1:1 satd NaHCO₃:satd NH₄Cl
- 15 (200 mL) and extracted with Et₂O (1000 mL). The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford a yellow oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0.5%-3% EtOAc/hexane) provided ethyl 3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynoate as a pale yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 231 (M+1).

- 255 -



(b). Ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enoate.

According to the procedure of E. Piers et al., *Can. J. Chem.* **1994**, 72, 1816, to a 150 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser and magnetic stirring was added ethyl 3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynoate, **Example 52(a)**,
 5 (15 g, 65 mmol), sodium iodide (31 g, 209 mmol, Aldrich) and glacial acetic acid (48 mL, 830 mmol). The reaction mixture was purged with N₂ and the flask immersed in a pre-heated 115 °C oil bath. The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 115 °C for 4 h, then allowed to cool to 25 °C and treated with H₂O
 10 (200 mL). The aqueous phase was extracted with Et₂O (500 mL). The organic layer was washed with satd Na₂CO₃ until the evolution of CO₂ ceased, then washed with 1 M Na₂S₂O₃ (100 mL), satd NaCl, dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo to provide ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enoate as a yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 359 (M+1).

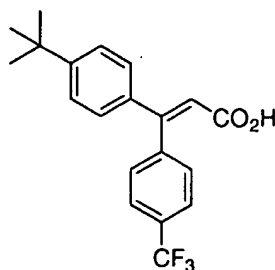


15

(c) Ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate. To a 100 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser and magnetic stirring was added ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enoate, **Example 52(b)**, (0.75 g, 2.1 mmol), 4-trifluoromethylphenylboronic acid
 20 (0.60 g, 3.1 mmol, Aldrich), tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)palladium (0) (0.24 g, 0.21 mmol, Aldrich), toluene (10 mL), EtOH (2 mL), and 2 M aq. Na₂CO₃ (2 mL). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 80 °C under N₂ overnight, allowed to cool to 25 °C and diluted with EtOAc (50 mL). The organic layer was separated, washed with H₂O, satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄,

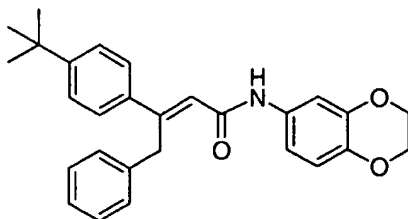
- 256 -

filtered and concentrated to afford a brown oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 1.5%-2% EtOAc/hexane) provided the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 377 (M+1).

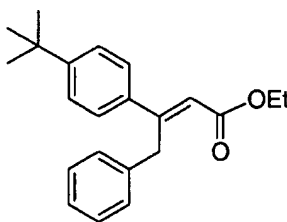


- 5 (d) **(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid.** To a 50 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser was added ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate, **Example 52(c)**, (0.74 g, 2.0 mmol), 1,4-dioxane (3 mL), KOH (0.66 g, 12 mmol) and H₂O (1.5 mL). The reaction mixture was heated and magnetically
- 10 stirred under reflux overnight then diluted with H₂O (20 mL) and acidified with 1 N HCl. The aqueous mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (3 x 100 mL). The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 349 (M+1).
- (e) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to
- 15 prepare **Example 1**, (2Z)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 52(d)**, (0.15 g, 0.43 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (0.07 g, 0.43 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 10%-18% EtOAc/hexane),
- 20 the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 150-151 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 482 (M+1).

- 257 -

Example 53

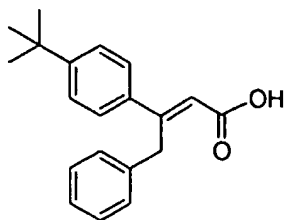
(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-phenylbut-2-enamide.



5

- (a) **Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-phenylbut-2-enoate.** A solution of ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enoate, **Example 52(b)**, (710 mg, 2.0 mmol) in anhydrous DMF (4 mL) was added dropwise to benzylzinc bromide (12 mL, 6.0 mmol, 0.5 M solution in THF, Aldrich) magnetically stirred under Ar at 0 °C in a round-bottomed flask. The mixture was treated with bis(acetonitrile)dichloropalladium (II) (78 mg, 0.30 mmol, Aldrich) in one portion. The reaction mixture was then magnetically stirred for 16 h at 25 °C, diluted with Et₂O (100 mL) and washed with 1N HCl (25 mL) and satd NaCl (25 mL). The organic phase was dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo and the residue purified by silica gel chromatography (49:1 hexane:EtOAc) to provide the title product as a colorless oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 323 (M+1).

15



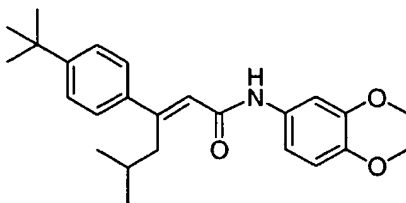
- (b) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-4-phenylbut-2-enoic acid.** Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-phenylbut-2-enoate, **Example 53(a)**, (530 mg, 1.8 mmol) was treated with KOH (0.22 g, 4.0 mmol), H₂O (4 mL) and 1,4-dioxane (2 mL),

20

- 258 -

then magnetically stirred under reflux for 16 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with H₂O (50 mL), acidified with 1 N HCl and extracted with chloroform. The combined organic extract was washed with satd NaCl, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue was crystallized from EtOAc and hexane to provide the title product as a white solid.

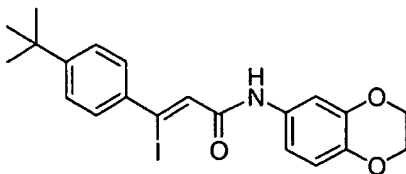
(c) (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-phenylbut-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-4-phenylbut-2-enoic acid, **Example 53(b)**, (250 mg, 0.85 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (140 mg, 0.93 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (chloroform), the title product as off-white needles. MP 97–99 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 428 (M+1).

Example 54

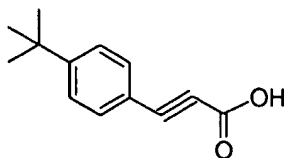
(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-5-methylhex-2-enamide.

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 53**, starting from 3-methylbutylzinc bromide (Aldrich), ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enoate, **Example 52(b)**, and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (Aldrich), the title product was obtained as an off-white solid. MP 123 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 394 (M+1).

- 259 -

Example 55

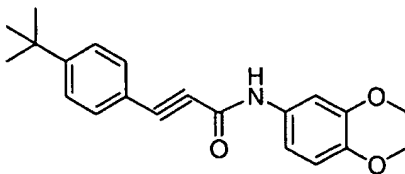
N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enamide.



5

(a) **3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynoic acid.** To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring and a reflux condenser was added a solution of ethyl 3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynoate, **Example 52(a)**, (4.6 g, 20 mmol) in 1,4-dioxane (5 mL). The solution was treated with H₂O (15 mL) and KOH (2.2 g, 40 mmol) then stirred and heated at reflux under Ar for 18 h. After allowing to cool to 25 °C, the mixture was diluted with H₂O (200 mL) and washed with Et₂O (50 mL). The aqueous phase was separated, acidified with 1 N HCl and extracted with chloroform. The chloroform extract was washed with satd NaCl, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Crystallization from EtOAc and hexane provided the title product as white needles. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 203 (M+1).

15



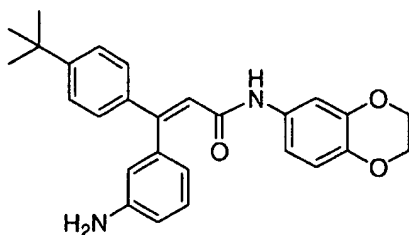
(b) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynoic acid, **Example 55(a)**, (404 mg, 2.0 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (330 mg, 2.2 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product as a white solid. MP 199 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 336 (M+1).

20

(c) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure described for the preparation

- 260 -

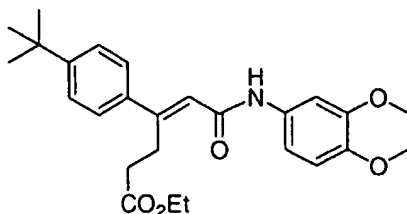
of **Example 52(b)**, N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynamide, **Example 55(b)**, (0.335 g, 1.0 mmol), sodium iodide (0.48 g, 3.2 mmol, Aldrich) and glacial acetic acid (0.73 mL) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (chloroform), the title product as
 5 yellow crystals. MP 164 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 464 (M+1).

Example 56

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-(3-aminophenyl)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

10 Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 52**, step (c), 3-aminophenylboronic acid (0.23 g, 1.5 mmol, Avocado) and N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enamide, **Example 55**, (0.46 g, 1.0 mmol) provided the title product as off-white crystals. MP 140 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 429 (M+1).

15

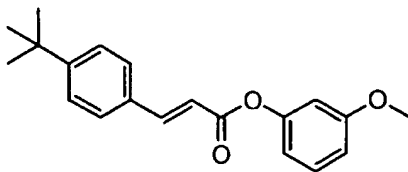
Example 57

Ethyl (4E)-5-(N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)carbamoyl)-4-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]pent-4-enoate.

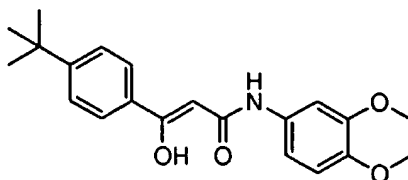
Analogously to the procedure used to prepare **Example 53**, step (a), 3-ethoxy-3-oxopropylzinc bromide (6.0 mL, 3.0 mmol, 0.5 M in THF, Aldrich) and N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enamide, **Example 55**, (0.46 g, 1.0 mmol) provided the title product as a pale yellow solid. MP 104–105 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 438 (M+1).

20

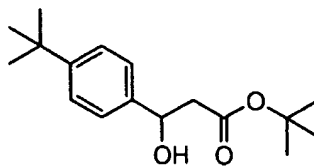
- 261 -

Example 58

3-Methoxyphenyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate. To a 100 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (500 mg, 2.45 mmol, EMKA-Chemie), CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL), and DMF (10 uL) under N₂. The solution was treated dropwise with oxalyl chloride (4.0 mL, 8.0 mmol, 2.0 M in CH₂Cl₂, Aldrich) then stirred at 25 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the residue treated with 3-methoxyphenol (269 uL, 2.45 mmol, Aldrich), THF (20 mL) and satd K₂CO₃ (15 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight, then acidified to pH 4.5 with 1 N HCl. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 × 30 mL), the combined organic extract was dried and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as a white solid. MP 83 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 311 (M+1).

Example 60

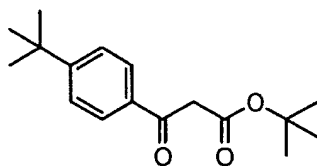
N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-hydroxyprop-2-enamide.



(a) tert-Butyl 3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-hydroxypropanoate. To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added *N,N*-diisopropylamine (10.4 mL, 74.0 mmol, Aldrich) and anhydrous THF (20 mL). The solution was stirred at -78 °C under N₂ and treated dropwise with *n*-butyllithium (30.0 mL,

- 262 -

75.0 mmol, 2.5 M in hexane, Aldrich). After stirring for 10 min at -78°C , the reaction mixture was treated with *t*-butyl acetate (10.8 mL, 80.1 mmol, Aldrich). After stirring 30 min at -78°C , the enolate was added via cannula to a solution of 4-*t*-butylbenzaldehyde (10.0 g, 61.6 mmol, Fluka) in anhydrous THF (100 mL), stirred under N_2 at -78°C . The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 0°C with stirring over 3 h, then quenched with satd NH_4Cl and concentrated in vacuo to remove the THF. The resulting mixture was diluted with satd NH_4Cl (100 mL) and extracted with Et_2O (200 mL). The organic extract was washed with H_2O (100 mL), satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over MgSO_4 , filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 261 ($\text{M}+1-\text{H}_2\text{O}$).



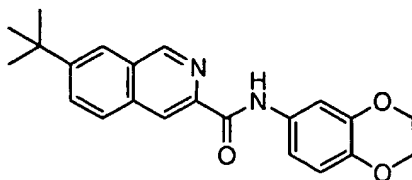
(b) **tert-butyl 3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-oxopropanoate.** *tert*-Butyl 3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-hydroxypropanoate, **Example 60(a)**, (5.0 g, 18 mmol) was dissolved in CH_2Cl_2 (100 mL), magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 0°C , and treated with pyridinium chlorochromate (5.8 g, 27 mmol, Aldrich) in portions. The reaction mixture was allowed to warm to 25°C and stirred at that temperature for 5 h. The mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite, the filtercake washed with CH_2Cl_2 (3 x 100 mL) and the combined filtrate was concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (1:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as a dark oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 277 ($\text{M}+1$).

(c) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-hydroxyprop-2-enamide.** According to the procedure of Wiseman et al., *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, 56, 1713-1718, to a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring and a reflux condenser was added *tert*-butyl 3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-3-oxopropanoate, **Example 60(b)**, (640 mg, 2.3 mmol), 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (350 mg, 2.3 mmol, Aldrich) and anhydrous toluene (20 mL). The mixture was stirred and heated at 130°C for 2 h. Upon allowing to cool to 25°C , a precipitate

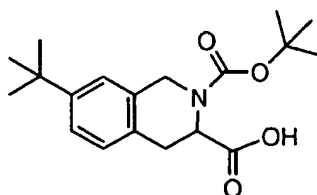
- 263 -

was observed. Hexane (20 mL) was added to the suspension and the precipitate collected by filtration, washed with hexane (20 mL) and dried in vacuo at 60 °C to provide the title product as a pale grey solid. MP 161 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 354 (M+1).

5

Example 61

N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)[7-(tert-butyl)(3-isoquinolyl)]-carboxamide.

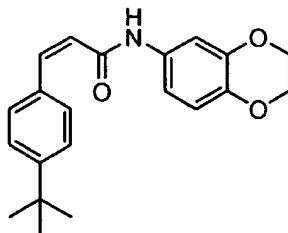


- 10 (a) **2-[(tert-Butyl)oxycarbonyl]-7-(tert-butyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.** According to the procedure of D. Ma, et al., *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.* **1998**, 8(18), 2447-2450, to a 250 mL round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring and reflux condenser, was added *N*-Boc-(*p*-tert-butyl)-*S*-phenylalanine (5.0 g, 15.6 mmol, Bachem), formaldehyde (50 mL, 37 wt. % in
- 15 H₂O, Aldrich) and cond HCl (30 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred and heated at 90 °C for 4 h. The solvents were removed in vacuo to provide 3.6 g of a residue [MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 234 (M+1)] which was dissolved in THF (140 mL) and treated with 5% aq. K₂CO₃ (140 mL) and di-*t*-butyl dicarbonate (4.8 g, 22 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight,
- 20 then acidified to pH 5 with 1 N HCl. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (300 mL), the organic phase washed with satd NaCl (100 mL) and H₂O (120 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (2:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 334 (M+1).

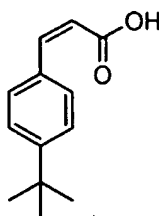
- 264 -

- (b) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)[7-(tert-butyl)(3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolyl)]carboxamide hydrochloride.** To a 250 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 2-[(tert-butyl)oxycarbonyl]-7-(tert-butyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, **Example 61(a)**, (1.5 g, 4.65 mmol), DMF (15 mL), 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (700 mg, 4.65 mmol, Aldrich), dimethylaminopropyl-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride (1.25 g, 6.5 mmol, Aldrich) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (2.5 mL, 13.95 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C overnight then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in EtOAc (35 mL), washed with H₂O (2×15 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (3:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided a product [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 467 (M+1)] which was treated with 4.0 N HCl in 1,4 dioxane (10 mL, Aldrich) and stirred at 25 °C for 1 h. The solvent was removed in vacuo to provide the title product as the hydrochloride salt. MP 134 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 367 (M+1).
- (c) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)[7-(tert-butyl)(3-isoquinolyl)]carboxamide.** Analogous to the procedure of E. D. Cox; T. J. Hagen; R. M. McKernan; J. M. Cook, *Med. Chem. Rest.* **1995**, 5(9), 710-718, N-(2H,3H-benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)[7-(tert-butyl)(3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolyl)]carboxamide hydrochloride, **Example 61(b)**, was suspended in EtOAc (55 mL), washed with 10% NaHCO₃ (20 mL) and H₂O (10 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. The resulting residue (80 mg, 0.22 mmol) was dissolved in toluene (10 mL) and treated with manganese dioxide (110 mg, 1.1 mmol). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 70 °C under N₂ for 1.5 h, filtered through Celite and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (8:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as a yellow solid. MP 154-157 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 363 (M+1).

- 265 -

Example 63

N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

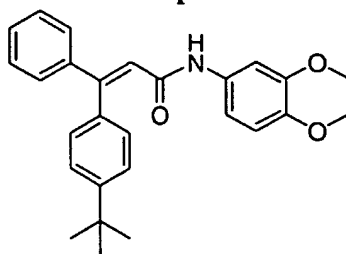


5

(a) **(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid.** Potassium bis(trimethylsilyl)amide (6.1 mL, 3.05 mmol, 0.5 M in toluene, Aldrich) was added dropwise with stirring to a mixture of diphenylphosphonoacetic acid ethyl ester (0.98 g, 3.05 mmol, TCI-US) and 18-crown-6 (3.35 g, 12.7 mmol, Aldrich) in anhydrous THF (20 mL), magnetically stirred at -78 °C under Ar. The reaction mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 0.5 h then treated dropwise with a solution of 4-*tert*-butylbenzaldehyde (0.42 mL, 2.54 mmol, Aldrich) in anhydrous THF (5 mL). The mixture was stirred at -78 °C for 1 h, quenched with satd NH₄Cl (5 mL), warmed to 25 °C, diluted with H₂O (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic extracts were washed with satd NaCl, dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide a brown viscous oil. [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 233 (M+1)] The oil (0.83 g) was dissolved in THF (5 mL) and MeOH (5 mL), magnetically stirred in a round-bottomed flask at 25 °C, and treated with 1 N LiOH (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 18 h, the organic solvents removed in vacuo, and the aqueous phase was washed with Et₂O, acidified with 10% citric acid and extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic extracts were dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 205 (M+1).

- 266 -

(b) **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 63(a)**, (0.46 g, 2.3 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (0.38 g, 2.58 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product as a white solid. MP 114–116 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 338 (M+1).

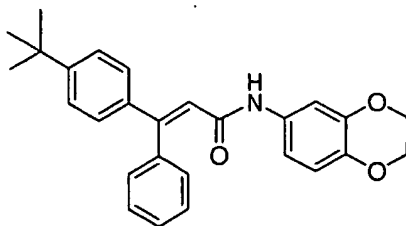
Example 64

N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-phenylprop-2-enamide.

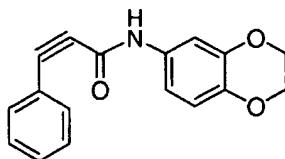
10 N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-ynamide, **Example 55(b)**, (0.34 g, 1.0 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous EtOAc (50 mL) in a 100 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with reflux condenser and magnetic stirring under dry nitrogen atmosphere. To this solution was added iodobenzene (0.20 g, 1.0 mmol, Aldrich) and bis(dibenzylideneacetone)palladium (0.080 g, 0.14 mmol, Acros), followed by diethylamine (0.34 mL, 3.3 mmol, Aldrich) and formic acid (0.098 mL, 2.6 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was heated under reflux for 20 h, cooled to room temperature, washed with 1 N HCl (2 x 5 mL), 1 N NaOH (2 x 5 mL), satd NaCl (5 mL) and dried over Na₂SO₄. The organic solution was filtered and concentrated to afford a brown oil which was

15 20 purified by silica gel chromatography (20 % EtOAc/hexane) to give the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 80-82 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 414 (M+1).

- 267 -

Example 65

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-phenylprop-2-enamide.



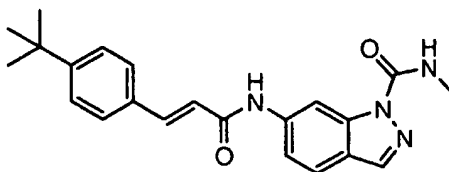
5

(a). N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-phenylprop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, phenylpropionic acid (5.8 g, 140 mmol, Aldrich) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (6.65 g, 44 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane, the title compound as a white solid. MP 132 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 280 (M+1).

10

(b). (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-phenylprop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 64**, 1-*tert*-butyl-4-iodobenzene (0.26 g, 1.0 mmol, Aldrich) and N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-phenylprop-2-enamide, **Example 65(a)**, (0.28 g, 1.0 mmol) provided, after recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane, the title compound as an off-white solid. MP 139 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 414 (M+1).

15

Example 66

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(N-methylcarbamoyl)(1H-indazol-6-

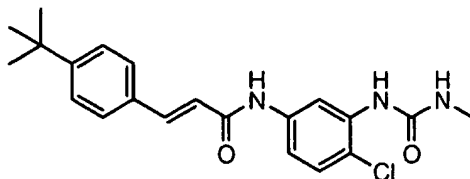
yl)]prop-2-enamide. To a round-bottomed flask, equipped with a magnetic stir bar, was added (2E)-N-(1H-indazol-6-yl)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide, **Example 155**, (61 mg, 0.19 mmol), THF (8 mL) and isocyanatomethane (54 mg, 0.96 mmol, Carbolabs). The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature for 8 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with EtOAc (10 mL), washed with water

20

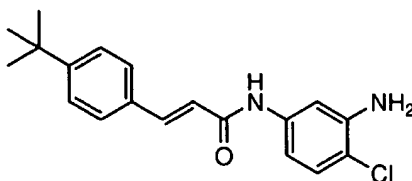
- 268 -

(8 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (40:20:1 hexane:EtOAc:MeOH) provided the title product as an off-white solid. MP 208-209 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 377 (M+1).

5

Example 67

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-{4-chloro-3-[(methylamino)carbonylamino]phenyl}prop-2-enamide.



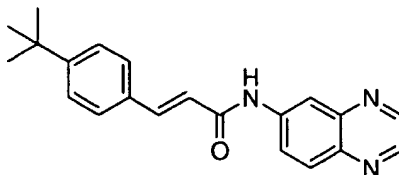
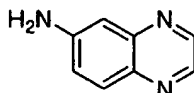
10 (a) **(2E)-N-(3-Amino-4-chlorophenyl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.** To a round-bottomed flask equipped with a magnetic stir bar, was added (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-(4-chloro-3-nitrophenyl)prop-2-enamide, **Example 156**, (250 mg, 0.69 mmol), EtOH (8 mL), indium (800 mg, 6.9 mmol, Aldrich) and satd NH₄Cl (10 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for

15 5 h. The solvents were removed in vacuo, the residue was dissolved in EtOAc (20 mL), washed with water (20 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to yield the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 329 (M+1).

(b) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-{4-chloro-3-[(methylamino)carbonylamino]phenyl}prop-2-enamide.** According to the procedure used to prepare **Example 66**, (2E)-N-(3-amino-4-chlorophenyl)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide, **Example 67(a)**, (90 mg, 0.27 mmol) and isocyanatomethane (156 mg, 2.7 mmol, Carbolabs) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (2:1 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as an off-white

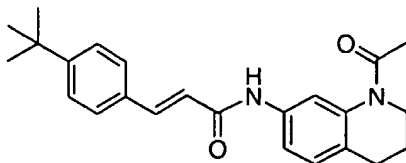
25 solid. MP 120-122 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 386 (M+1).

- 269 -

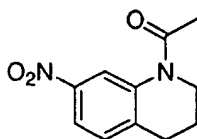
Example 68**(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-quinoxalin-6-ylprop-2-enamide.**

- 5 **(a) Quinoxaline-6-ylamine.** To a round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added 4-nitro-1,2-phenylenediamine (1.0 g, 6.5 mmol, Aldrich), acetonitrile (10 mL) and glyoxal (2.2 mL, 19 mmol, 40 wt. % in water, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was allowed to stir at 50 °C for 12 h, then concentrated in vacuo to yield 1.1 g crude 6-nitro-quinoxaline. The crude product was dissolved
- 10 in methanol, treated with 10% Pd/C (10 mg, Aldrich) and stirred under H₂ (1 atm) at 25 °C overnight. The reaction mixture was filtered through Celite and the filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 146 (M+1).
- 15 **(b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-quinoxalin-6-ylprop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 2**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (100 mg, 0.40 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and quinoxaline-6-ylamine, **Example 68(a)**, (71 mg, 0.40 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (1:2 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a yellow solid. MP 229-230 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 332 (M+1).

- 270 -

Example 69

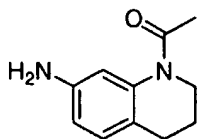
(2E)-N-(1-acetyl(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl))-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) 1-Acetyl-7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline. A mixture of 7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, **Example 19(a)**, (0.36 g, 2.0 mmol) and acetic anhydride (3.5 mL, 37 mmol, Aldrich) in a 15 mL round-bottomed flask, was heated at reflux for 1.5 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the residue was partitioned between EtOAc and 30% ammonium hydroxide. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (10 mL) and the combined organic layers were dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give the title compound as a yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 221 (M+1).

10



(b) 1-Acetyl-7-amino-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3**, step (a), 1-acetyl-7-nitro-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, **Example 69(a)**, (0.44 g, 2.0 mmol) was converted to the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 191 (M+1).

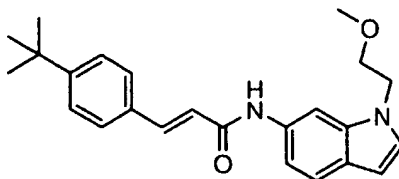
15

(c) (2E)-N-(1-acetyl(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl))-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. According to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (0.41 g, 2.0 mmol, EMKA Chemie) and 1-acetyl-7-amino-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinoline, **Example 69(b)**, (370 mg, 2.0 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (1:1 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as an amorphous white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 377 (M+1).

20

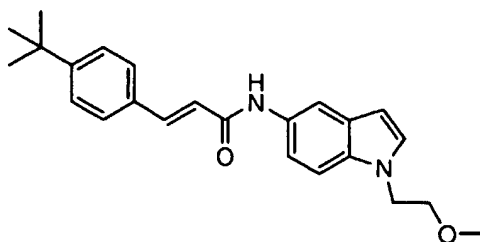
25

- 271 -

Example 70**(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(2-methoxyethyl)indol-6-yl]prop-2-enamide.**

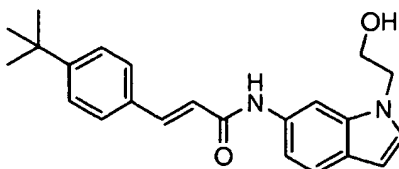
- 5 To a round-bottomed flask was added, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-indol-6-ylprop-2-enamide, **Example 189**, (320 mg, 1.0 mmol) and anhydrous DMF (20 mL). The solution was stirred magnetically and treated with sodium hydride (0.10 g, 2.5 mmol, 60% dispersion in mineral oil, Aldrich) followed by 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (140 mg, 1.0 mmol, Aldrich). Stirring was continued at
- 10 25 °C for 2 h, then the reaction mixture was quenched by the addition of water (50 mL) and extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (60:40 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title compound as a yellow solid. MP 133 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 377 (M+1).

15

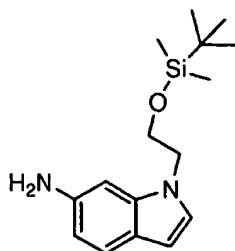
Example 71**(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(2-methoxyethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide.**

- Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 70**, 2-bromoethyl methyl ether (140 mg, 1.0 mmol, Aldrich) and (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide, **Example 161**, (320 mg, .01 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (65:35 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 138 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 377 (M+1).
- 20

- 272 -

Example 72

(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)indol-6-yl]prop-2-enamide.

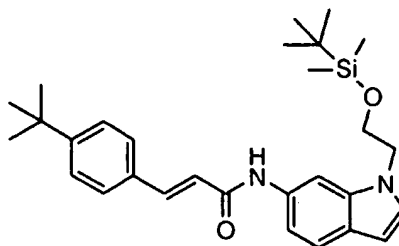


5

(a) 1-[2-(1,1,2,2-Tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indole-6-ylamine.

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 33**, step (a), 6-nitroindole (0.49 g, 3.0 mmol, Aldrich) and (2-bromoethoxy)-*tert*-butyldimethylsilane (0.72 g, 3.0 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 291 (M+1).

10



(b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indol-6-yl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and 1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indole-6-ylamine, **Example 72(a)**, (290 mg, 1.0 mmol) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 477 (M+1).

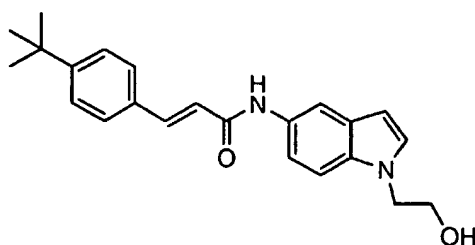
15

(c) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)indol-6-yl]prop-2-enamide. (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indol-6-yl]prop-2-enamide, **Example 72(b)**, (420 mg,

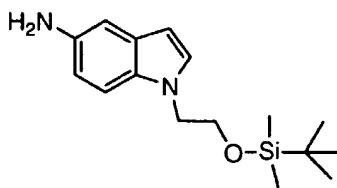
20

- 273 -

0.88 mmol) was transferred to a round-bottomed flask and treated with tetrabutylammonium fluoride (2.0 mL, 2.0 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich) under N₂. The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 2 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (25 mL) and extracted with EtOAc. The organic
 5 extract was concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (30:70 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title compound as a yellow solid. MP 178 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 363 (M+1).

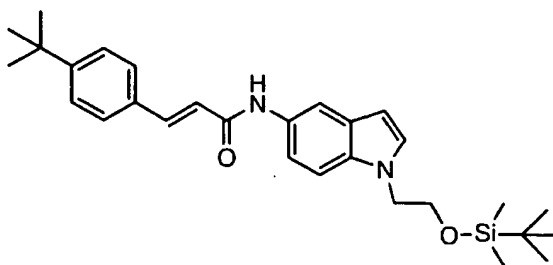
Example 73

10 **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide.**



(a) 1-[2-(1,1,2,2-Tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indole-5-ylamine.

According to the procedure used to prepare **Example 33**, step (a), 5-nitroindole
 15 (0.49 g, 3.0 mmol, Aldrich) and (2-bromoethoxy)-*tert*-butyldimethylsilane (0.72 g, 3.0 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 291 (M+1).



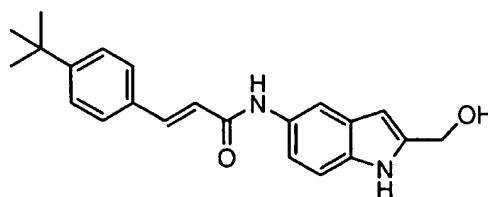
(b) (2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-{1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indol-5-yl}prop-2-enamide. According to the procedure used
 20

- 274 -

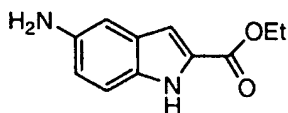
to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (100 mg, 0.50 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and 1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indole-5-ylamine, **Example 73(a)**, (145 mg, 0.50 mmol) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 477 (M+1).

- 5 (c) **(2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide**. According to the procedure used to prepare **Example 72**, step (c), (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-N-[1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide, **Example 73(b)**, (130 mg, 0.27 mmol) and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (1.0 mL, 1.0 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich)
- 10 provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (30:70 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 182 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 363 (M+1).

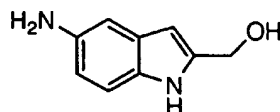
Example 74



- 15 **(2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[2-(hydroxymethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide**.



- (a) **Ethyl 5-aminoindole-2-carboxylate**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3**, step (a), ethyl 5-nitroindole-2-carboxylate (2.3 g, 9.9 mmol, Acros) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 205 (M+1).
- 20

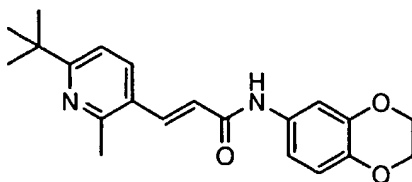


- (b) **(5-Aminoindol-2-yl)methan-1-ol**. Ethyl 5-aminoindole-2-carboxylate, **Example 74(a)**, (1.5 g, 7.3 mmol) was transferred to a round-bottomed flask and treated with lithium aluminum hydride (10 mL, 10 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich)
- 25 under N₂. The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 1 h, then

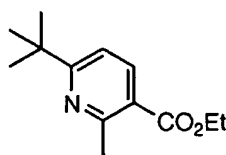
- 275 -

quenched by the dropwise addition of H₂O (0.5 mL) followed by 20% aq. KOH (30 mL). The suspension was filtered and the aqueous phase extracted with EtOAc. The organic extract was concentrated in vacuo. Purification of the crude product by silica gel chromatography (20:80 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 163 (M+1).

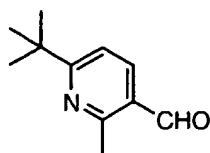
(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[2-(hydroxymethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (200 mg, 1.0 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and (5-aminoindol-2-yl)methan-1-ol, **Example 74(b)**, (160 mg, 1.0 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (40:60 hexane:EtOAc), the title product as a pale tan amorphous solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 349 (M+1).

Example 75

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)-2-methylpyridin-3-yl]prop-2-enamide.

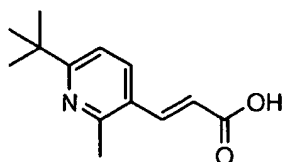


(a) **Ethyl 6-(tert-butyl)-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxylate**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 44**, step (a), ethyl 2-methylnicotinate (8.3 g, 50 mmol, Aldrich), trimethylacetic acid (26 g, 250 mmol, Aldrich), silver nitrate (1.7 g, 10 mmol, Aldrich), 10% aq. sulfuric acid (50 mL) and ammonium persulfate (23 g, 100 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (80:20 hexane:EtOAc), the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 222 (M+1).



- 276 -

(b) **6-(tert-Butyl)-2-methylpyridine-3-carbaldehyde**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 43**, step (b), ethyl 6-(tert-butyl)-2-methylpyridine-3-carboxylate, **Example 75(a)**, (5.2 g, 23 mmol) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 178 (M+1).



5

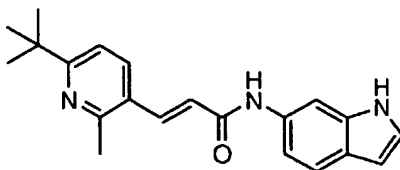
(c) **(2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 40**, step (a), 6-(tert-butyl)-2-methylpyridine-3-carbaldehyde, **Example 75(b)**, (3.0 g, 17 mmol) and triethyl phosphonoacetate (4.0 g, 18 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 220 (M+1).

10

(d) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 75(c)**, (110 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (76 mg, 0.50 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow amorphous solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 353 (M+1).

15

Example 76

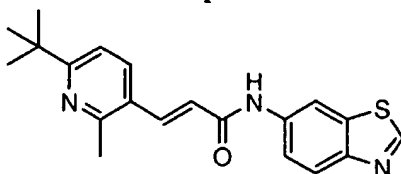


20 **(2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]-N-indol-6-ylprop-2-enamide.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 75(c)**, (220 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 6-aminoindole (130 mg, 1.0 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow solid.

25 MP 182 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 334 (M+1).

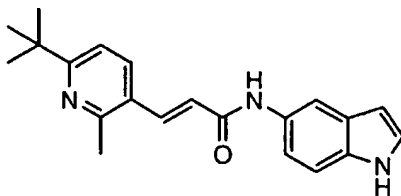
- 277 -

Example 77

(2E)-N-Benzothiazol-6-yl-3-[6-(tert-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.

- 5 Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 75(c)**, (220 mg, 1.0 mmol) and 6-aminobenzothiazole (150 mg, 1.0 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a pale yellow amorphous solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 352 (M+1).

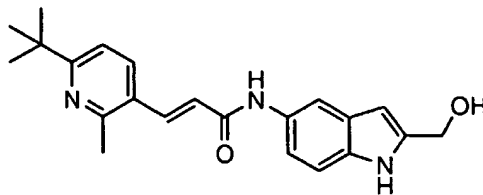
10

Example 78

(2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide.

- Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 75(c)**, (0.88 g, 4.0 mmol) and 5-aminoindole (0.53 g, 4.0 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow amorphous solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 334 (M+1).

15

Example 79

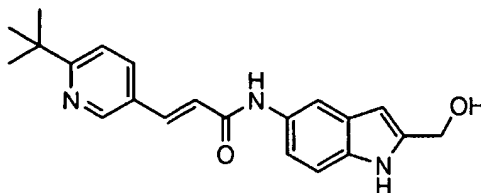
- 20 **(2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]-N-[2-(hydroxymethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-butyl)-2-methyl(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 75(c)**, (110 mg, 0.50 mmol) and

- 278 -

(5-aminoindol-2-yl)methan-1-ol, **Example 74(b)**, (81, 0.50 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (25:75 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 213 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 364 (M+1).

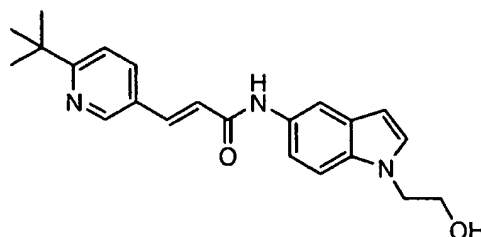
5

Example 80

(2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)(3-pyridyl)]-N-[2-(hydroxymethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide.

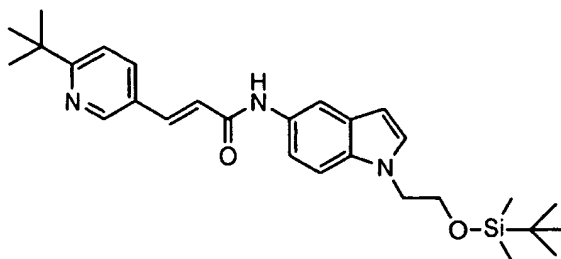
Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 44(b)**, (41 mg, 0.20 mmol) and (5-aminoindol-2-yl)methan-1-ol, **Example 74(b)**, (32 mg, 0.20 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (20:80 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow amorphous solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 350 (M+1).

10

Example 81

15

(2E)-3-[6-(tert-Butyl)(3-pyridyl)]-N-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide.



(a) (2E)-3-[6-(tert-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]-N-{1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indol-5-yl}prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used

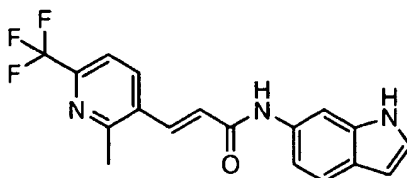
20

- 279 -

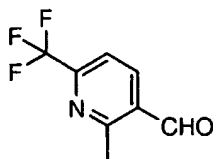
to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 44(b)**, (41 mg, 0.20 mmol) and 1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indole-5-ylamine, **Example 73(a)**, (60 mg, 0.20 mmol) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 478 (M+1).

- 5 **(b) (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-Butyl)(3-pyridyl)]-N-[1-(2-hydroxyethyl)indol-5-yl]prop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 72**, step (c), (2E)-3-[6-(*tert*-butyl)(3-pyridyl)]-N-{1-[2-(1,1,2,2-tetramethyl-1-silapropoxy)ethyl]indol-5-yl}prop-2-enamide, **Example 81(a)**, (75 mg, 0.16 mmol) and tetrabutylammonium fluoride (0.50 mL, 0.50 mmol, 1.0 M in
- 10 THF, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (20:80 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow amorphous solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 364 (M+1).

Example 82

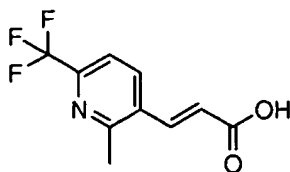


- 15 **(2E)-N-Indol-6-yl-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.**



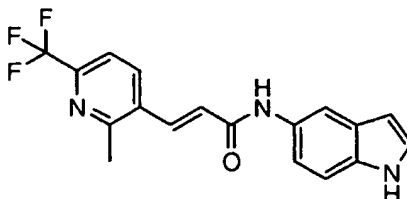
- (a) 2-Methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carbaldehyde.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 43**, step (b), 2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carboxylic acid (5.0 g, 24 mmol, Oakwood) provided
- 20 the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 190 (M+1).

- 280 -

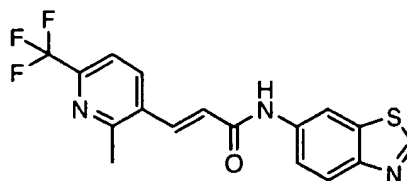
**(b) (2E)-3-[2-Methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 40**, step (a), 2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carbaldehyde, **Example 82(a)**, (3.7 g, 20 mmol) and triethyl phosphonoacetate (4.5 g, 20 mmol, Aldrich) provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 232 (M+1).

(c) (2E)-N-Indol-6-yl-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 82(b)**, (58 mg, 0.25 mmol) and 6-aminoindole (33 mg, 0.25 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow solid. MP 223 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 346 (M+1).

Example 83**(2E)-N-Indol-5-yl-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.**

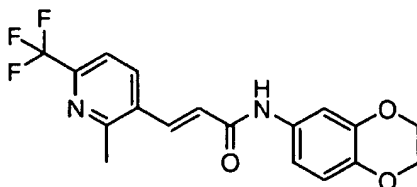
Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 82(b)**, (120 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 5-aminoindole (66 mg, 0.50 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow solid. MP 231 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 346 (M+1).

Example 84

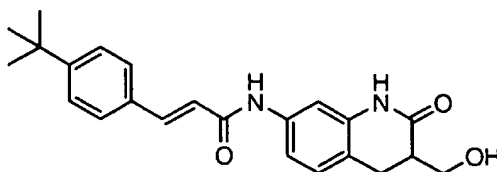
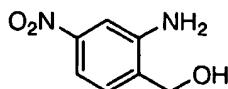
- 281 -

(2E)-N-Benzothiazol-6-yl-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 82(b)**, (120 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 6-aminobenzothiazole (75 mg, 0.50 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a white solid. MP 196 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 364 (M+1).

Example 85**(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[3,4-e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.**

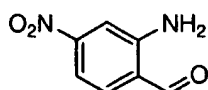
Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-methyl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 82(b)**, (120 mg, 0.50 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (76 mg, 0.50 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (55:45 hexane:EtOAc), the title compound as a yellow solid. MP 186 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 365 (M+1).

Example 86**(2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-N-[3-(hydroxymethyl)-2-oxo(7-1,3,4-trihydroquinolyl)]prop-2-enamide.**

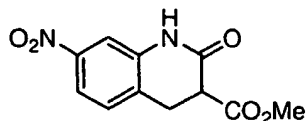
(a) (2-Amino-4-nitrophenyl)methan-1-ol. To a solution of 4-nitroanthranilic acid (910 mg, 5.0 mmol, Aldrich) in THF (15 mL), magnetically stirred at 0 °C, was added borane-tetrahydrofuran complex (15 mL, 15 mmol, 1.0 M in THF,

- 282 -

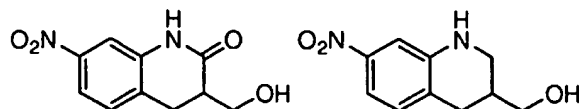
Aldrich) dropwise. The reaction mixture was heated to reflux overnight. The mixture was then cooled to 0 °C and treated dropwise with MeOH (5 mL) followed by 1 N NaOH (30 mL). After stirring for 30 min at room temperature, the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic phases
 5 were washed with satd NaCl (20 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (50% EtOAc/hexane) followed by recrystallization from EtOAc/hexane provided the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 169 (M+1).



- 10 (b) **2-Amino-4-nitrobenzaldehyde.** A mixture of 2-amino-4-nitrophenyl)methan-1-ol, **Example 86(a)**, (336 mg, 2.0 mmol) and MnO₂ (3.48 g, 40.0 mmol, Aldrich) in CH₂Cl₂/hexane (1:1, 10 mL) was stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The suspension was filtered and washed with CH₂Cl₂. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to give the crude product. MS (ESI, pos. ion)
 15 m/z: 167 (M+1).



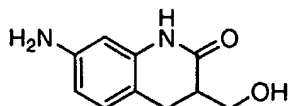
- (c) **Methyl 7-nitro-2-oxo-1,3,4-trihydroquinoline-3-carboxylate.** A mixture of 2-amino-4-nitrobenzaldehyde, **Example 86(b)**, (1.66 g, 10.0 mmol), dimethyl malonate (1.37 mL, 12.0 mmol, Aldrich), copper (II) acetate (100 mg, 0.5 mmol,
 20 Aldrich) and potassium acetate (99 mg, 1.0 mmol, Bayer) in acetic acid (20 mL) was stirred at 110 °C for 48 h. Most of the solvent was removed in vacuo and the resulting precipitate was collected by filtration, washed with EtOAc and dried in vacuo to give the title product. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 248 (M+1)



- 25 (d) **3-(Hydroxymethyl)-7-nitro-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one and (7-nitro-3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)methan-1-ol.** To a solution of methyl 7-nitro-2-oxo-1,3,4-trihydroquinoline-3-carboxylate, **Example 86(c)**, (1.23 g, 5.0 mmol) in THF

- 283 -

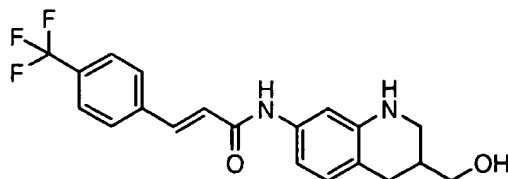
(50 mL) was added LiBH₄ (12.5 mL, 25.0 mmol, 2.0 M in THF, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 40 °C for 18 h, then quenched by the careful addition of satd NH₄Cl (20 mL). The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 min, then extracted with EtOAc (2 x 50 mL). The combined organic phases
5 were washed with satd NaCl (10 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (50% EtOAc/CH₂Cl₂) provided 3-(hydroxymethyl)-7-nitro-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one [MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 223 (M+1)] and (7-nitro-3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)methan-1-ol [MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 209 (M+1)].



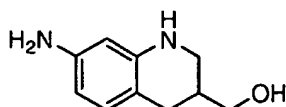
10 (e) **7 -Amino-3-(hydroxymethyl)-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3**, step (a), 3-(hydroxymethyl)-7-nitro-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one, **Example 86(d)**, (66 mg, 0.30 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂), the title
15 compound. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 193 (M+1).

(f) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-N-[3-(hydroxymethyl)-2-oxo(7-1,3,4-trihydroquinolyl)]prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, 4-*tert*-butyl-*trans*-cinnamic acid (67 mg, 0.33 mmol, EMKA-Chemie) and 7-amino-3-(hydroxymethyl)-1,3,4-trihydroquinolin-2-one, **Example**
20 **86(e)**, (52 mg, 0.27 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (10% MeOH/EtOAc), the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 201-203 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 379 (M+1).

- 284 -

Example 87

(2E)-N-[3-(Hydroxymethyl)(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.



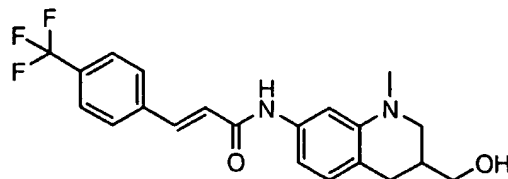
5

(a) (7-Amino-3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)methan-1-ol. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 3**, step (a), (7-nitro-3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)methan-1-ol, **Example 86(d)**, (140 mg, 0.68 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂), the title compound. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 179 (M+1).

10

(b) (2E)-N-[3-(Hydroxymethyl)(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, *trans*-4-(trifluoromethyl)cinnamic acid (120 mg, 0.55 mmol, Aldrich) and (7-amino-3-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)methan-1-ol, **Example 87(a)**, (98 mg, 0.55 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (10% MeOH/EtOAc), the title compound as a pale yellow solid. MP 176-179 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 377 (M+1).

15

Example 88

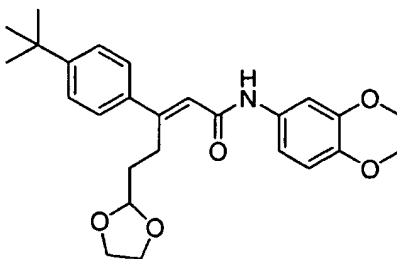
(2E)-N-[3-(hydroxymethyl)-1-methyl(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.

20

A mixture of (2E)-N-[3-(hydroxymethyl)(7-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinolyl)]-3-[4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide, **Example 87**, (75 mg, 0.20 mmol), iodomethane (0.014 mL, 0.22 mmol, Aldrich) and NaHCO₃ (84 mg, 1.0 mmol) in

- 285 -

DMF (1.0 mL, Aldrich) was stirred for 4 h at room temperature. Water (5 mL) was added and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic phases were washed with water (5 mL), satd NaCl (5mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (60% EtOAc/CH₂Cl₂) provided the title product as a white solid. MP 167-169 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 391 (M+1).

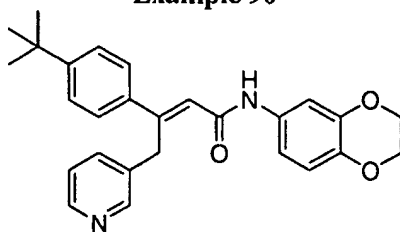
Example 89

- 10 (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-5-(1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)pent-2-enamide.

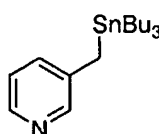
Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 53(a)**, (1,3-dioxolan-2-ylethyl)zinc bromide (3.0 mL, 1.5 mmol, 0.5 M THF solution, Rieke) and N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-

- 15 enamide, **Example 55**, (0.23 g, 0.50 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 30%-35% EtOAc/hexane), the title product as an amorphous white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 438 (M+1).

- 286 -

Example 90

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-(3-pyridyl)but-2-enamide.



5

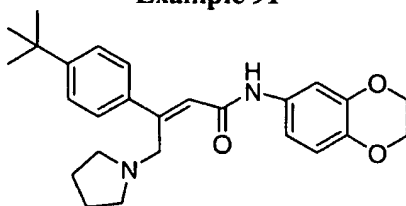
(a). 3-(Tributylstannanylmethyl)pyridine. Analogous to the procedure of Kaiser, E. M. and Petty, J. D. *Synthesis* **1975**, 705-706, to a 50 mL round-bottomed flask equipped with magnetic stirring was added lithium diisopropylamide (5.2 mL, 10 mmol, 2.0 M in heptane/THF/ethylbenzene, Aldrich) at 0 °C under nitrogen, followed by hexamethylphosphoramide (1.8 mL, 10 mmol, Aldrich). The mixture was stirred for 15 min, then treated with a solution of 3-picoline (1.0 mL, 10 mmol, Aldrich) in THF (4 mL) over 5 min. The reaction mixture was stirred for 30 min, then a solution of tributyltin chloride (2.8 mL, 10 mmol, Aldrich) in THF (6 mL) was added. The resulting solution was gradually warmed to room temperature and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 2%-5% EtOAc/hexane) provided the title product as a colorless oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 382 (M+1).

(b) (2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-(3-pyridyl)but-2-enamide. To a 50 mL round-bottomed flask, equipped with magnetic stirring, was added 3-(tributylstannanylmethyl)pyridine, **Example 90(a)**, (0.37 g, 0.97 mmol), N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enamide, **Example 55**, (0.30 g, 0.65 mmol), 1-methyl-2-pyrrolidinone (2.5 mL, Aldrich), and tetrakis(triphenylphosphine)-palladium (0) (75 mg, 0.06 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred at 110 °C overnight, then diluted with EtOAc (100 mL), washed with satd NaHCO₃, water and satd NaCl. The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and

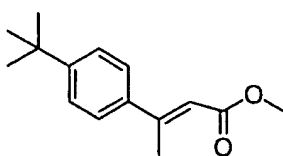
25

- 287 -

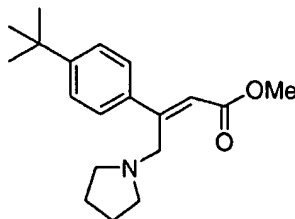
concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (25%-45% EtOAc/hexane) was followed by reverse phase preparative HPLC (CH₃CN/H₂O with 0.1%TFA). The fractions containing desired product were neutralized with NaHCO₃. The mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and the organic phase concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as an amorphous white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 429 (M+1).

Example 91

- 10 **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-pyrrolidinylbut-2-enamide.**



- (a). **Methyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]but-2-enoate.** To a 100 mL round-bottomed flask purged with N₂ was added 1-bromo-4-*tert*-butylbenzene (2.34 g, 11.0 mmol, Aldrich), methyl crotonate (1.08 mL, 10 mmol, Aldrich), *N*-methylcyclohexylamine (3.31 mL, 15 mmol, Aldrich), palladium acetate (0.045 g, 0.20 mmol, Aldrich), tetraethylammonium chloride (1.66 g, 10.0 mmol, Fluka), and *N,N*-dimethylacetamide (40 mL, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 100 °C overnight, then allowed to cool to 25 °C, diluted with Et₂O, and filtered through Celite. The solution was washed with H₂O (3 x), dried over MgSO₄, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0.5%-3% dichloromethane in hexane) provided the title product as a colorless oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 233 (M+1).

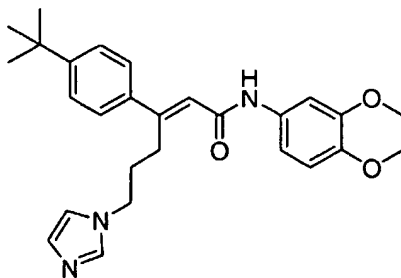


- 288 -

- (b) **Methyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-pyrrolidinylbut-2-enoate.** A solution of methyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]but-2-enoate, **Example 91(a)**, (0.37 g, 1.6 mmol) in CCl₄ (15 mL), magnetically stirred in a 50 mL round-bottomed flask under N₂, was treated with *N*-bromosuccinimide (0.31 g, 1.75 mmol, Aldrich) and 2,2'-azobisisobutyronitrile (5 mg, 0.03 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred under reflux overnight, then allowed to cool to 25 °C. The solid was filtered. The filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to afford a yellow oil [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 311, 313 (M+1, M+3)]. To a solution of the yellow oil in THF (5 mL), was added pyrrolidine (0.16 mL, 1.9 mmol, Aldrich) and *N,N*-diisopropylethylamine (0.33 mL, 1.9 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at room temperature overnight, then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was treated with water and extracted with dichloromethane (3 x). The organic phase was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford a yellow oil. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 4%-20% EtOAc/hexane) provided the title product as a pale yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 302 (M+1).
- (c). **N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)(2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-pyrrolidinylbut-2-enamide.** To a 50 mL round-bottomed flask charged with methyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-4-pyrrolidinylbut-2-enoate, **Example 91(b)**, (188 mg, 0.62 mmol) was added THF (2 mL), MeOH (0.2 mL), H₂O (1 mL), and lithium hydroxide monohydrate (54 mg, 1.25 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at room temperature overnight. The excess lithium hydroxide was removed by filtration. The mixture was purified by reverse phase preparative HPLC (CH₃CN/H₂O with 0.1%TFA), concentrated in vacuo, then treated with an excess of HCl in Et₂O. Concentration in vacuo provided a pale yellow solid 0.15 g [MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 288 (M+1)]. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, the solid (77 mg) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (61 mg, 0.40 mmol, Aldrich) provided the crude title product. Purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 1-5% MeOH in CH₂Cl₂) was followed by reverse phase preparative HPLC (CH₃CN/H₂O with 0.1%TFA). The fractions containing desired product were neutralized with NaHCO₃. The mixture was

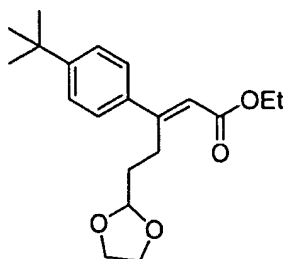
- 289 -

extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and the organic phase concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a pale yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 421 (M+1).

Example 92

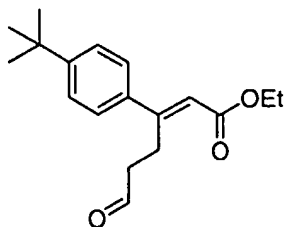
5

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enamide.



(a). Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-5-(1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)pent-2-enoate.

10 Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 53(a)**, starting from (1,3-dioxolan-2-ylethyl)zinc bromide (0.5 M THF solution, 40 mL, 20mmol, Rieke) and ethyl (2Z)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-3-iodoprop-2-enoate, **Example 52(b)**, (3.58 g, 10.0 mmol), the title product was obtained as a colorless oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 333 (M+1).

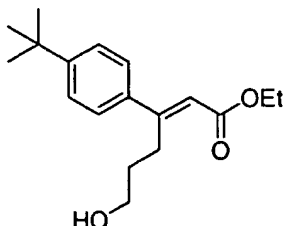


15

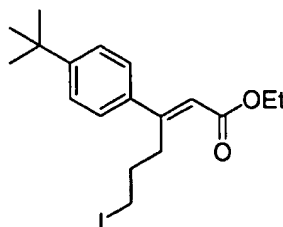
(b). Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-6-oxohex-2-enoate. To a round-bottomed flask was added ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-5-(1,3-dioxolan-2-yl)pent-2-enoate, **Example 92(a)**, (2.7 g, 8.1 mmol), THF (3 mL), and 5 N HCl (12 mL). The reaction mixture was initially stirred at room temperature for 24 h,

- 290 -

then heated to 40 °C overnight. The pH was adjusted to ~5-6 by the addition of NaHCO₃ and the mixture was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic extract was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5% EtOAc/hexane) provided the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 289 (M+1).



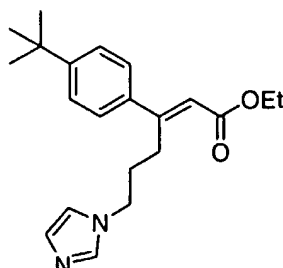
(c). **Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-6-hydroxyhex-2-enoate.** To solution of ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-6-oxohex-2-enoate, **Example 92(b)**, (1.5 g, 5.3 mmol) in MeOH (18 mL), magnetically stirred at 0 °C in a 100 mL round-bottomed flask, was added sodium borohydride (0.40 g, 11 mmol, Aldrich). The mixture was allowed to gradually warm up to room temperature over 2 h, then quenched with water (20 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (4 x). The organic extract was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (15% EtOAc/hexane) provided the title product as a colorless oil in quantitative yield. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 291 (M+1).



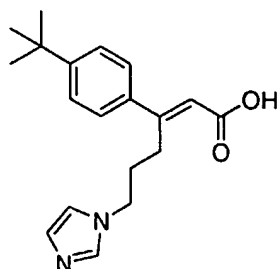
(d). **Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-6-iodohex-2-enoate.** To a 100 mL round-bottomed flask charged with ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-6-hydroxyhex-2-enoate, **Example 92(c)**, (0.80 g, 2.7 mmol) and CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) at room temperature, was added triphenylphosphine (0.87 g, 3.3 mmol, Aldrich), imidazole (0.22 g, 3.3 mmol, Aldrich), and I₂ (1.2 g, 4.7 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was stirred for 2 h, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (3% EtOAc/hexane) provided the title

- 291 -

product as a white semi-solid in quantitative yield. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 401 (M+1).



- (e) **Ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enoate.** To a
 5 100 mL round-bottomed flask charged with ethyl (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-6-
 iodohept-2-enoate, **Example 92(d)**, (1.1 g, 2.7 mmol), imidazole (0.20 g,
 3.0 mmol, Aldrich), benzyltriethylammonium chloride (63 mg, 0.30 mmol,
 Aldrich), and CH₂Cl₂ (15 mL), stirred magnetically at room temperature, was
 added potassium hydroxide (50% aqueous solution, 1.5 mL). The reaction mixture
 10 was stirred at 50 °C overnight, then diluted with water. The reaction mixture was
 extracted with CH₂Cl₂. The organic solution was dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered, and
 concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (50%
 EtOAc/hexane) provided the title product as a pale yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion)
 m/z : 341 (M+1).

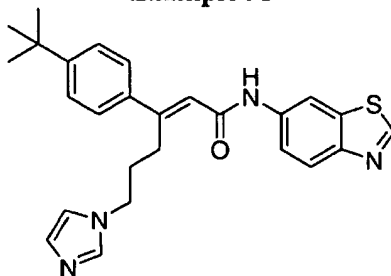


- 15
 (f) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enoic acid.** To a 50 mL
 round-bottomed flask equipped with a reflux condenser was added ethyl (2E)-3-
 [4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enoate, **Example 92(e)**, (0.35 g,
 1.0 mmol), THF (6 mL) and KOH (50% aqueous solution, 1.5 mL). The reaction
 20 mixture was heated and magnetically stirred under reflux overnight, then
 concentrated in vacuo and acidified with glacial acetic acid to pH ~4-5. The
 aqueous mixture was extracted with CH₂Cl₂ and the organic phase was dried over

- 292 -

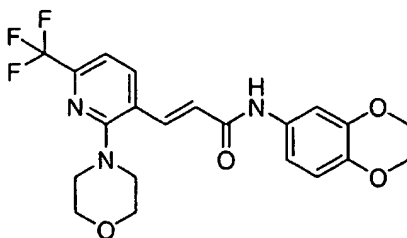
Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (5%-10% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂) provided the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 313 (M+1).

- (g) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enoic acid, **Example 92(f)**, (76 mg, 0.24 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (36 mg, 0.24 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (3% -5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂), the title product as an amorphous off-white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 446 (M+1).

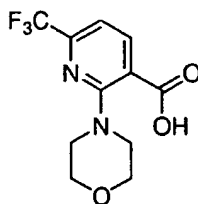
Example 93

- 3-(4-*tert*-Butyl-phenyl)-6-imidazol-1-yl-hex-2-enoic acid benzothiazol-6-ylamide**. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[4-(*tert*-butyl)phenyl]-6-imidazolylhex-2-enoic acid, **Example 92(f)**, (76 mg, 0.24 mmol) and 6-aminobenzothiazole (36 mg, 0.24 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (3% -5% MeOH/CH₂Cl₂), the title compound as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 445 (M+1).

- 293 -

Example 94

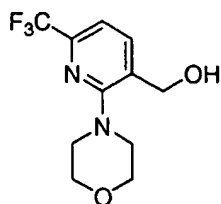
(2E)-N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2-morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.



5

(a) 2-Morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carboxylic acid. To a round-bottomed flask was added 2-chloro-6-trifluoromethylnicotinic acid (2.0 g, 8.9 mmol, Matrix) and morpholine (5.0 g, 57 mmol, Aldrich). The reaction mixture was magnetically stirred at 25 °C for 48 h, then diluted with 1 N HCl (100 mL) and extracted with EtOAc (100 mL). The aqueous phase was saturated with NaCl and extracted again with EtOAc (50 mL). The combined EtOAc extracts were washed with 1 N HCl (50 mL), satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford the title product as an off-white waxy solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 277 (M+1).

10



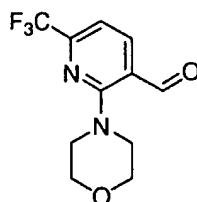
15

(b) [2-Morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)-3-pyridyl]methan-1-ol. A solution of 2-morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carboxylic acid, **Example 94(a)**, (2.1 g, 7.6 mmol) in anhydrous THF (20 mL) was treated dropwise with lithium aluminum hydride (15 mL, 15 mmol, 1.0 M in THF, Aldrich) with stirring under N₂ at 25 °C. The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 1.5 h, then quenched by the dropwise addition of a 10% aqueous solution of Rochelle salt

20

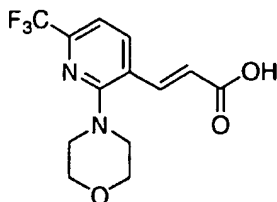
- 294 -

(50 mL, potassium sodium tartrate, Aldrich). EtOAc (50 mL) was added and the bi-phasic mixture stirred vigorously for 2 h at 25 °C. The mixture was diluted with water (100 mL) and the phases separated. The aqueous phase was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 75 mL), the organic phases were combined and washed with 1 N NaOH (2 x 75 mL), satd NaCl (75 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford the title product as a viscous yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 263 (M+1).



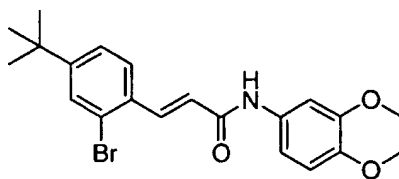
(c) **2-Morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carbaldehyde**. A solution of oxalyl chloride (3.6 mL, 7.2 mmol, 2.0 M in CH₂Cl₂, Aldrich) in anhydrous CH₂Cl₂ (20 mL) was magnetically stirred under N₂, in an oven-dried round-bottomed flask, at -60 °C. The solution was treated dropwise with methyl sulfoxide (1.1 mL, 15 mmol, Aldrich) then stirred for 10 min. A solution of [2-morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)-3-pyridyl]methan-1-ol, **Example 94(b)**, (1.7 g, 6.5 mmol) in anhydrous CH₂Cl₂ (20 mL) was added via cannula, and the reaction mixture stirred at -60 °C for 15 min. Triethylamine (4.5 mL, 32 mmol, Aldrich) was added, the cooling bath was removed, and the reaction mixture allowed to warm to 25 °C and stirred at that temperature for 1 h. The mixture was washed with water (30 mL) and the aqueous wash was back-extracted with CH₂Cl₂ (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic phase was washed with water (30 mL), satd NaCl (30 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (9:1 hexane:EtOAc) provided the title product as a viscous yellow oil. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 261 (M+1).

- 295 -

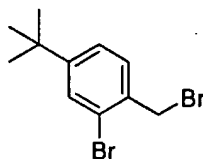


- (d) **(2E)-3-[2-Morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid.** Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 40**, step (a), 2-morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)pyridine-3-carbaldehyde, **Example 94(c)**, (1.2 g, 4.6 mmol) provided the title product as a yellow solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 303 (M+1).
- 5
- (e) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2-morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enamide.** (2E)-3-[2-Morpholin-4-yl-6-(trifluoromethyl)(3-pyridyl)]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 94(d)**, (200 mg, 0.66 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL) and treated with oxalyl chloride (0.36 mL, 0.72 mmol, 2.0 M in CH₂Cl₂, Aldrich) and anhydrous DMF (2 uL). The reaction mixture was stirred at reflux for 30 min, then concentrated in vacuo. The residue was dissolved in anhydrous CH₂Cl₂ (10 mL), treated with pyridine (0.27 mL, 3.5 mmol, Aldrich) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (120 mg, 0.79 mmol, Aldrich) and stirred at reflux for 15 min. The reaction mixture was concentrated in vacuo and the residue dissolved in EtOAc (75 mL). The mixture was washed with 1 N HCl (2 x 50 mL), 1 N NaOH (50 mL), water (50 mL), satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane provided the title product as pale tan crystals. MP 200-201 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 436 (M+1).
- 10
- 15
- 20

- 296 -

Example 95

(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)-2-bromophenyl]prop-2-enamide.

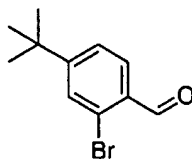


5

(a) 4-(tert-Butyl)-2-bromo-1-(bromomethyl)benzene. According to the procedure of Kikuchi, D. et al, *J. Org. Chem.* **1998**, 63, 6023-6026, to a solution of sodium bromate (22 g, 145 mmol, Aldrich) in water (75 mL), magnetically stirred in an Erlenmeyer flask at 25 °C, was added a solution of 4-*t*-butyltoluene (5.0 mL, 29 mmol, Aldrich) in acetonitrile (60 mL). The bi-phasic mixture was vigorously stirred while a solution of sodium bisulfite (15 g, 145 mmol, Baker) in water (150 mL) was added dropwise, via addition funnel, over 20 min. The reaction mixture was stirred for 6 h, then extracted with Et₂O (300 mL). The organic phase was washed with satd aq. Na₂S₂O₃ (2 x 100 mL), satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford of the title product as a pale orange oil.

10

15

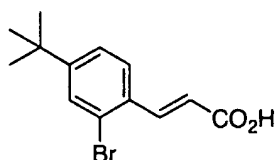


(b) 4-(tert-Butyl)-2-bromobenzaldehyde. According to the procedure of Mallory, et al, *Tetrahedron* **2001**, 57, 3715-3724, a solution of sodium ethoxide (12 mL, 32 mmol, 21% in EtOH, Aldrich) in absolute EtOH (100 mL) was magnetically stirred under N₂ at 25 °C and treated with 2-nitropropane (2.9 mL, 32 mmol, Aldrich) followed by 4-(*tert*-butyl)-2-bromo-1-(bromomethyl)benzene, **Example 95(a)**, (9.0 g, 29 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 25 °C for 5 h, then concentrated in vacuo to an orange solid. The solid was partitioned

20

- 297 -

between Et₂O (150 mL) and water (100 mL). The layers were separated and the organic phase was washed with water (100 mL), 1 N NaOH (2 x 75 mL), satd NaCl (50 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to afford the title product as an orange oil.



5

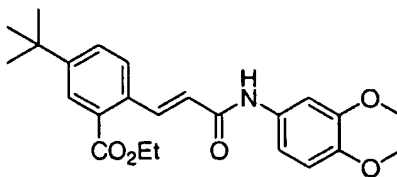
(c) **(2E)-3-[4-(tert-Butyl)-2-bromophenyl]prop-2-enoic acid**. Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 40**, step (a), 4-(tert-butyl)-2-bromobenzaldehyde, **Example 95(b)**, (6.5 g, 27 mmol) provided the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 283, 285 (M, M+2).

10

(d) **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)-2-bromophenyl]prop-2-enamide**. Analogous to the procedure described for **Example 94**, step (e), (2E)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)-2-bromophenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 95(c)**, (3.0 g, 11 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (1.9 g, 13 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after recrystallization from CH₂Cl₂ and hexane, the title product as off-white crystals. MP 206-210 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z: 416, 418 (M, M+2).

15

Example 96



20

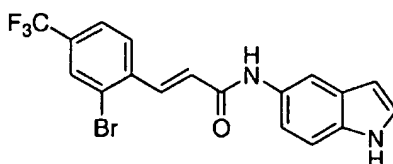
Ethyl 2-[(1E)-2-(N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)carbamoyl)vinyl]-5-(tert-butyl)benzoate.

According to the procedure of Ma, et al, *J. Org. Chem.* **1999**, *64*, 120-125, a solution of (2E)-N-(2H,3H-benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[4-(tert-butyl)-2-bromophenyl]prop-2-enamide, **Example 95**, (200 mg, 0.48 mmol) in anhydrous EtOH (5 mL) and methyl sulfoxide (5 mL) was treated with triethylamine (0.67 mL, 0.48 mmol, Aldrich) and 1,3-bis(diphenylphosphino)propane (50 mg, 0.12 mmol, Aldrich). The mixture was purged with a stream of carbon monoxide, then treated with palladium acetate (22 mg, 0.10 mmol, Aldrich), and stirred

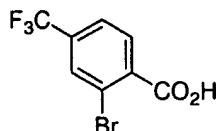
25

- 298 -

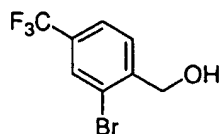
under a balloon of carbon monoxide in a 70 °C oil bath for 3 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C and partitioned between EtOAc (50 mL) and water (20 mL). The organic phase was washed with water (10 mL), satd NaCl (10 mL), dried over MgSO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo. Purification by silica gel chromatography (step gradient, 4:1 then 3:1, hexane:EtOAc), followed by recrystallization from EtOAc and hexane, provided the title product as white crystals. MP 155 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) *m/z*: 410 (M+1).

Example 97

10 **(2E)-3-[2-Bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide.**



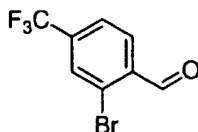
(a) 2-Bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid. To a solution of 2-bromo-1-methyl-4-trifluoromethylbenzene (7.6 g, 32 mmol, ABCR) in pyridine (75 mL) was added tetraethylammonium permanganate (24 g, 96 mmol, prepared according to the procedure of Sala, et al. *J. Chem. Soc., Chem. Comm.* **1978**, 253). The reaction mixture was warmed to 70 °C and stirred at that temperature for 30 h. The reaction mixture was allowed to cool to 25 °C and poured into an ice bath containing cond HCl (150 mL) and NaHSO₃ (150 g). The mixture turned to a clear aqueous solution and was extracted with EtOAc (4 x 200 mL). The combined extracts were washed with satd NaCl (200 mL), dried over Na₂SO₄, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to provide the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, neg. ion) *m/z*: 267 (M-1).



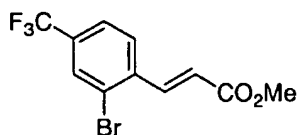
(b) [2-Bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]methan-1-ol. Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, step (a), 2-bromo-4-

- 299 -

(trifluoromethyl)benzoic acid, **Example 97(a)**, (5.4 g, 20 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-10% EtOAc in hexane), the title product as a white solid. MS (ESI, neg. ion) m/z : 313 (M+acetate).



- 5 **(c) 2-Bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzaldehyde.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, step (b), [2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]methanol, **Example 97(b)**, (4.6 g, 18 mmol) provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-4% EtOAc in hexane), the title product as a colorless oil.

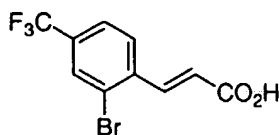


10

- (d) Methyl (2E)-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, step (c), 2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)benzaldehyde, **Example 97(c)**, (2.3 g, 8.9 mmol) and carbomethoxymethylene triphenylphosphorane (4.2 g, 12.5 mmol, Aldrich)

- 15 provided, after purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-3% EtOAc in hexane), the title product as a white solid.

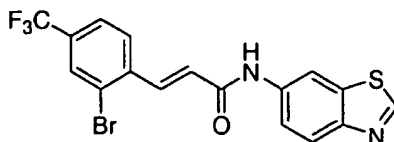


- (e) (2E)-3-[2-Bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 46**, step (d), methyl (2E)-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoate, **Example 97(d)**, (2.25 g, 8.9 mmol) provided the title product.

- 20 **(f) (2E)-3-[2-Bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]-N-indol-5-ylprop-2-enamide.** Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 97(e)**, (140 mg, 0.48 mmol)
25 and 5-aminoindole (75 mg, 0.57 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after purification by

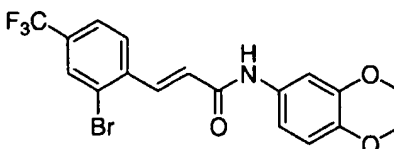
- 300 -

silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-25% EtOAc in hexane), the title compound as a yellow solid. MP 205-207 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 409 (M+1).

Example 98

5 **(2E)-N-Benzothiazol-6-yl-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 97(e)**, (140 mg, 0.47 mmol) and 6-aminobenzothiazole (86 mg, 0.57 mmol, Lancaster) provided, after
10 purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-30 % EtOAc in hexane), the title product as an off-white solid. MP 214-215 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 427 (M+1).

Example 99

15 **(2E)-N-(2H,3H-Benzo[e]1,4-dioxan-6-yl)-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enamide.**

Analogous to the procedure used to prepare **Example 1**, (2E)-3-[2-bromo-4-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl]prop-2-enoic acid, **Example 97(e)**, (140 mg, 0.47 mmol) and 1,4-benzodioxan-6-amine (86 mg, 0.57 mmol, Aldrich) provided, after
20 purification by silica gel chromatography (gradient: 0-18 %EtOAc in hexane), the title product as an off-white solid. MP 212-213 °C. MS (ESI, pos. ion) m/z : 428 (M+1).